

DocuPrint CM215 Series




User Guide

Apple, Bonjour, ColorSync, Macintosh, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc. Microsoft, Windows Vista, Windows, and Windows Server are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Wi-Fi Protected Setup, WPA, and WPA2 are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

All product/brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

Microsoft product screen shot(s) reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol . Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

WARNING:

This equipment will be inoperable when mains power fails.

IMPORTANT:

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.
2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.
4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.

XEROX, the sphere of connectivity design, and DocuPrint are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xerox Corporation in the U.S. or Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

DocuWorks is a trademark of Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the DocuPrint CM215 series.

This guide is intended for users who use the printer for the first time, and provides all the necessary operating information about the print, copy, scan, and fax functions.

Please read this guide to achieve the best performance from this printer.

This guide assumes you are familiar with computers and the basics of network operation and configuration.

After reading this guide, keep it safe and handy for future reference.

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Contents

Preface	3
Types of Manuals	13
Using This Guide	14
Organization	14
Conventions	15
Safety Notes	16
Electrical Safety	17
Machine Installation	19
Operational Safety	22
Consumable	24
Warning and Caution Labels	25
Environment	26
Regulation	27
Radio Frequency Emissions (Class B)	27
Product Safety Certification (UL, CB)	27
Illegal Copies and Printouts	28
Security Precautions for Using Wireless LAN Products	29
Product Features	30
1 Specifications	33
Copy Function	34
Print Function	37
Scan Function	38
Fax Function (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	40
Direct Fax Function (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	41
2 Basic Operation	43
Main Components	44
Front View	44
Rear View	46
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	47
Operator Panel	48
Turning On the Printer	51
Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel	52
Printing a Panel Settings Page	53
Using the Operator Panel	53
Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)	53
Power Saver Mode	54
Exiting the Power Saver Mode	54

3	Printer Management Software	55
	Print and Scan Drivers.....	56
	CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	57
	Creating an Administrative Password	57
	Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only).....	58
	SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)	59
	Launcher (Windows Only)	60
	Address Book Editor (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	62
	Express Scan Manager	63
	Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only).....	64
	DocuWorks (Windows Only) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	65
4	Printer Connection and Software Installation.....	67
	Overview of Printer Connection and Software Installation	68
	USB Connection	68
	Ethernet Connection (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only).....	69
	Wireless Connection (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)	70
	Connecting Your Printer	71
	Available Features for Each Connection Type	72
	Connecting Printer to Your Computer.....	73
	Setting the IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)	
	(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only).....	83
	Printer's TCP/IP and IP Addresses.....	83
	Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address	84
	Assigning an IP Address Manually	85
	Verifying the IP Settings	87
	Printing and Checking the System Settings Page	88
	Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows.....	89
	Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (for Network	
	Connection Setup) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	89
	Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software	91
	Using Installer to Install Software	94
	Installing the XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver.....	95
	Setting Up for Web Services on Devices (WSD)	
	(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	105
	Setting Up for Shared Printing	
	(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	108
	Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X.....	120
	Installing Software	120
	Adding a Printer	121

5	Printing Basics	127
	About Print Media	128
	Print Media Usage Guidelines	128
	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Guidelines (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	129
	Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer	130
	Print Media Storage Guidelines	130
	Supported Print Media	131
	Usable Print Media	131
	Loading Print Media	133
	Capacity	133
	Print Media Dimensions	133
	Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	134
	Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)	142
	Manual Duplex Printing	147
	Using the Output Tray Extension	151
	Setting Paper Sizes and Types	152
	Setting Paper Sizes	152
	Setting Paper Types	152
	Printing	153
	Printing from the Computer	153
	Canceling a Print Job	154
	Selecting Printing Options	156
	Printing on Custom Size Paper	161
	Checking Status of Print Job	163
	Printing a Report Page	164
	Printer Settings	165
6	Copying	169
	Loading Paper for Copying	170
	Preparing a Document	171
	Making Copies From the Document Glass	172
	Making Copies From the ADF (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	174
	Setting Copy Options	175
	Number of Copies	176
	Color	176
	Collated	177
	Reduce/Enlarge	178
	Document Size	180
	Original Type	181
	Lighten/Darken	182
	Sharpness	183
	Auto Exposure	184
	Color Balance R	184
	Color Balance G	184
	Color Balance B	185

	Gray Balance	185
	N-Up	186
	Margin Top/Bottom.....	188
	Margin Left/Right	189
	Margin Middle	190
	Changing the Default Settings.....	191
7	Scanning	193
	Scanning Overview.....	194
	Scanning - From Computer	194
	Scanning - From Printer.....	194
	Scanning to a Computer.....	195
	Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application	195
	Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	196
	Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver	198
	Scanning Using the WIA Driver	200
	Scanning to a Computer or Server via SMB/FTP (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only).....	202
	Overview	202
	Confirming a Login name and Password.....	204
	Specifying a Destination to Store the Document	206
	Configuring the Printer Settings.....	219
	Sending the Scanned File to the Network	225
	Scanning to a USB Storage Device.....	226
	Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only).....	227
	Setting an E-mail Address Book	227
	Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File	229
	Adjusting Scanning Options	230
	Adjusting the Default Scan Settings	230
	Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job	233
8	Faxing (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only).....	235
	Connecting the Telephone Line.....	236
	Configuring Fax Initial Settings.....	238
	Setting Your Region.....	238
	Setting the Printer ID	239
	Setting the Time and Date	240
	Changing the Clock Mode	240
	Sending a Fax	241
	Loading an Original Document on the ADF	241
	Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass.....	242
	Resolution.....	243
	Original Type.....	243

Lighten/Darken	244
Inserting a Pause	244
Sending a Fax Automatically	245
Sending a Fax Manually	246
Confirming Transmissions	247
Automatic Redialing	247
Sending a Delayed Fax	248
Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)	249
For Windows	249
For Mac OS X	252
Receiving a Fax	254
About Receiving Modes	254
Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes	254
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode	254
Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode	255
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or ANS/FAX Mode	255
Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone	255
Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode	256
Receiving Faxes in the Memory	256
Polling Receive	256
Automatic Dialing	257
Speed Dialing	257
Storing a Number for Speed Dialing	257
Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial	258
Group Dialing	259
Setting Group Dial	259
Editing Group Dial	260
Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)	260
Printing an Address Book List	261
Other Ways to Fax	262
Using the Secure Receiving Mode	262
Using an Answering Machine	263
Using a Computer Modem	264
Setting Sounds	265
Speaker Volume	265
Ringer Volume	265
Specifying the Fax Settings	266
Changing the Fax Settings Options	266
Available Fax Setting Options	267
Changing Setting Options	270
Printing a Report	271

9	Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad	273
	Understanding the Printer Menus	274
	Report / List	274
	Meter Readings	275
	Admin Menu	276
	Defaults Settings	303
	Tray Settings	313
	Panel Language	314
	Panel Lock Function	315
	Enabling the Panel Lock	315
	Changing the Panel Lock Password	315
	Disabling the Panel Lock	316
	Limiting Access to Printer Operations	317
	Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode	318
	Resetting to Factory Defaults	319
	Using the Numeric Keypad	320
	Entering Characters (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	320
	Deleting Numbers or Names	320
10	Troubleshooting	321
	Clearing Jams	322
	Avoiding Jams	322
	Identifying the Location of Paper Jams	323
	Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	324
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer	328
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer	329
	Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray	331
	Jam Problems	334
	Basic Printer Problems	335
	Display Problem	336
	Printing Problems	337
	Print Quality Problems	339
	The Output Is Too Light	340
	Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side	341
	Random Spots/Blurred Images	342
	The Entire Output Is Blank	342
	Streaks Appear on the Output	343
	Pitched Color Dots	343
	Vertical Blanks	343
	Mottle	344
	Ghosting	345
	Fog	346
	Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)	346
	Auger Mark	347
	Wrinkled/Stained Paper	348

The Top Margin Is Incorrect.....	349
Color Registration Is Out of Alignment	350
Protrudent/Bumpy Paper	351
Copy Problem.....	352
Copy Quality Problems.....	353
Adjusting Color Registration	354
Performing Auto Correct.....	354
Printing the Color Registration Chart	355
Determining Values	356
Entering Values	357
Fax Problems (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	358
Scanning Problems	360
Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems	363
Wireless Problems (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only).....	364
Other Problem	365
Understanding Printer Messages	366
Contacting Service	375
Getting Help.....	376
LCD Panel Messages	376
SimpleMonitor Alerts (Windows Only)	376
Obtaining the Product Information	377
Non-Genuine Mode	378
Using the Operator Panel	378
Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only).....	379
 11 Maintenance	 381
Cleaning the Printer.....	382
Cleaning the Scanner	383
Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	385
Cleaning Inside the Printer	386
Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor	389
Replacing Toner Cartridges	390
Overview	391
Removing the Toner Cartridges	392
Installing a Toner Cartridge	393
Ordering Supplies.....	395
Consumables.....	395
When to Order Toner Cartridges.....	396
Recycling Supplies	396
Storing Consumables	397
Managing the Printer	398
Checking or Managing the Printer with the CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	398
Checking Printer Status with the SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)	399

	Checking Printer Status Through E-mail (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	400
	Conserving Supplies.....	401
	Checking Page Counts.....	402
	Moving the Printer	403
12	Contacting Fuji Xerox	407
	Technical Support.....	408
	Online Services	409
	Index.....	411

Types of Manuals

Paper Manuals

Safety Guide	Describes the information you need to know before using the printer and to operate the printer safely.
Setup Guide	Provides step-by-step instructions on how to set up your printer including the initial settings of the Fax and Scan functions. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.) Also describes how to setup wireless network. (Wireless LAN function is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 fw.)
Lifting Your Printer	Describes how to lift and hold your printer.

Manuals Included on the Software Pack CD-ROM

User Guide (this guide)	Describes how to get ready to print and set various features. It also covers the operator panel menus, troubleshooting tips, and maintenance information.
Troubleshooting Guide	Describes the troubleshooting tips for printer problems such as paper jams. This guide can be opened from the Launcher.
Product Features	Describes the product features. This guide can be opened from the installer.
Show Me How	Describes the error recovery procedures for the printer. This can be opened from the SimpleMonitor.

Using This Guide

This section describes the organization and conventions of this manual.

■ Organization

This guide is organized into the following chapters. The summary of each chapter is as follows:

1 Specifications	Describes the printer specifications.
2 Basic Operation	Describes the main components of the printer, the power saver mode, and how to turn on the printer.
3 Printer Management Software	Describes the software available for the printer.
4 Printer Connection and Software Installation	Describes the basic information about how to connect the printer to your computer and how to install the print driver.
5 Printing Basics	Describes the supported paper, how to load paper, and how to print data using various print features.
6 Copying	Describes how to copy documents and the adjustment features.
7 Scanning	Describes how to set and use the Scan features.
8 Faxing (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)	Describes how to set and use the Fax features. The Fax features are available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.
9 Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad	Describes the setting items available on the operator panel, their setup procedures, and how to use the numeric keypad.
10 Troubleshooting	Describes the troubleshooting tips for printer problems such as paper jams.
11 Maintenance	Describes how to clean the printer, how to replace toner cartridges, and how to see the printer status.
12 Contacting Fuji Xerox	Describes support information.

■ Conventions

- In this guide, personal computers and workstations are collectively called “computers”.
- The following terms are used throughout this guide:

IMPORTANT:



- Important information that must be read and followed.



NOTE:

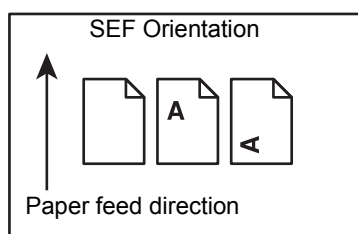
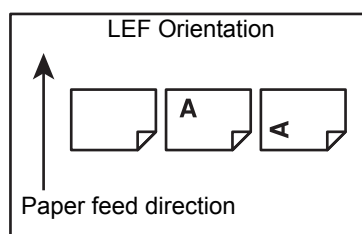
- Additional information that merits emphasis.

See also:

- References within this guide.
- Orientation of documents or paper is described in this guide as follows:

 , Long Edge Feed (LEF): Loading the document or paper with the long edge into the machine as shown in the illustration below.

 , Short Edge Feed (SEF): Loading the document or paper with the short edge into the machine as shown in the illustration below.




- The screen shots and illustrations in this guide are those of the DocuPrint CM215 fw unless there is a note. Some of the items in the screen shots and illustrations may not be displayed or available depending on your printer model.
- Some features are not available on some models.

Safety Notes
























Before using this product, read “Safety Notes” carefully for safety use.

This product and recommended supplies have been tested and found to comply with strict safety requirements including safety agency approvals and compliance with environmental standards. Follow the following instructions for safety use.

**WARNING:**

- Any unauthorized alteration including an addition of new functions or connection to external devices may not be covered by the product warranty. Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for more information.

Follow all warning instructions marked on this product. The warning marks stand for the followings:

 DANGER	Used for item that if not followed strictly, can lead death or severe or fatal injuries and the possibility to do it is comparatively high.
 WARNING	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can lead to severe or fatal injuries.
 CAUTION	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can cause injuries to user or damages to machine.
 : A symbol for items to pay attention to when handling machine. Follow instructions carefully to use machine safely.	
<div>CautionFlammableExplodableElectric shockHeated surfaceMoving objectPinched fingers</div>	
 : A symbol for prohibited items. Follow instructions carefully to avoid any dangerous acts.	
<div>ProhibitedNo fireDo not touchDo not use in bathroomDo not tear downKeep away from wetNever touch with wet hand</div>	
 : A symbol for items that must be performed. Follow instructions carefully to carry out these essential tasks.	
<div>InstructionsUnplugGround/Earth</div>	

■ Electrical Safety

WARNING

This product shall be operated by the power source as indicated on the product's data plate. Consult your local power company to check if your power source meets the requirements.



WARNING:

- **Connect this product to a protective earth circuit.**

This product is supplied with a plug that has a protective earth pin. The plug fits only into an earthed electrical outlet. This is a safety feature. If the plug doesn't fit to the outlet, contact an electrician to replace the outlet to avoid risk of electric shock. Never use an earthed adapter plug to connect the product to the electrical outlet that has no earth connection terminal.

Improper connection of a grounding conductor may cause electric shock.



Plug the power cord directly into a grounded electrical outlet. To prevent overheat and a fire accident, do not use an extension cord, a multi-plug adaptor or a multiple connector. Consult your local Fuji Xerox representative to check if an outlet is grounded.



Connect this product to a branch circuit or an outlet that has larger capacity than the rated ampere and voltage of this product. See the data plate on the rear panel of this product for its rated ampere and voltage.



Never touch the power cord with wet hands. It may cause electric shock.



Do not put an object on the power cord.



Always keep the plug connection free of dust. The dusty and damp environment may bring about minute electric current in a connector. It may generate heat and eventually cause a fire accident.



To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, only use the power cord supplied with this product or the ones designated by Fuji Xerox.

The power cord is exclusive use for this product. Do not use it for any other product.

Do not damage or alter the power cord. Damage and alteration may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

If the power cord is damaged or insulated wires are exposed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its replacement. Do not use a damaged or uninsulated cord to avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident.

CAUTION



When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.



Do not unplug or re-plug this product with the switch on. Plugging and unplugging a live connector may deform the plug and generate heat, and eventually cause a fire accident.



Hold the plug not the cord when unplugging this product, or it may damage the cord and cause electric shock or a fire accident.



For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, switch off and unplug the product when it (i.e., fax function) is not used over weekends or long holidays.

Please note that it cannot receive fax message during switch-off.



Once a month, switch off this product and check if

- the power cord is plugged firmly into an electrical outlet;
- the plug is not excessively heated, rusted or bent;
- the plug and electrical outlet are free of dust; and
- the power cord is not cracked or worn down.

Once you notice any unusual condition, switch off and unplug this product first and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

■ Machine Installation

WARNING



Do not locate this product where people might step on or trip over the power cord. Friction or excessive pressure may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

CAUTION



Never locate this product in the following places:

- Near radiators or any other heat sources
- Near volatile flammable materials such as curtains
- In the hot, humid, dusty or poorly ventilated environment
- In the place receiving direct sunlight
- Near cookers or humidifiers



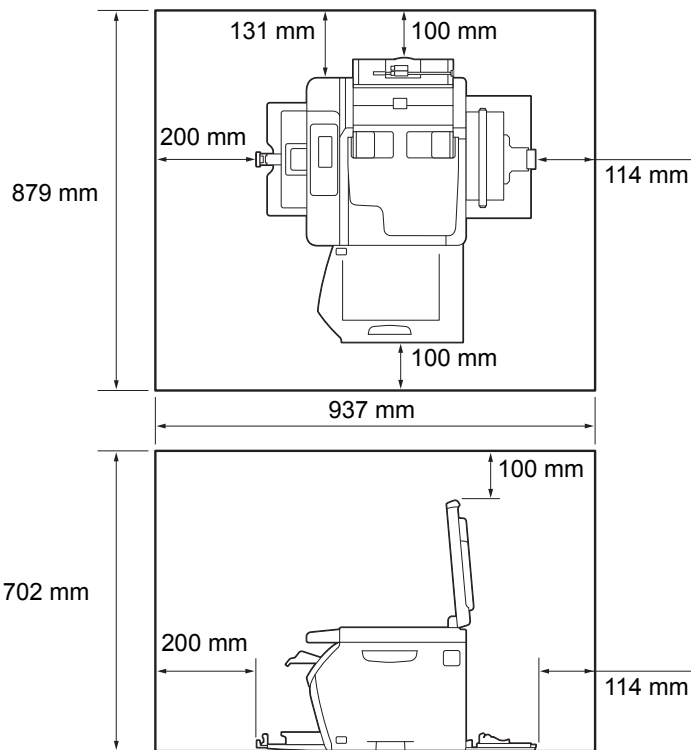
Locate this product on a level and sturdy surface that can withstand a weight of 15.0 Kg (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw) / 14.3 Kg (DocuPrint CM215 b). Otherwise, if tilted, the product may fall over and cause injuries.



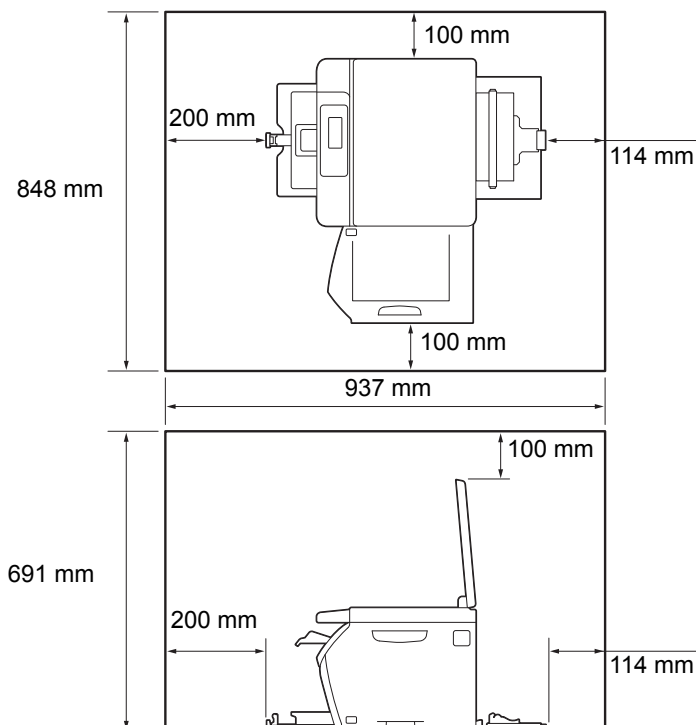
Locate this product in a well-ventilated area. Do not obstruct ventilation openings of the product.

Keep the minimum clearance as follows for ventilation and an access to the power plug. Unplug the product if an abnormal condition is noted.

DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:

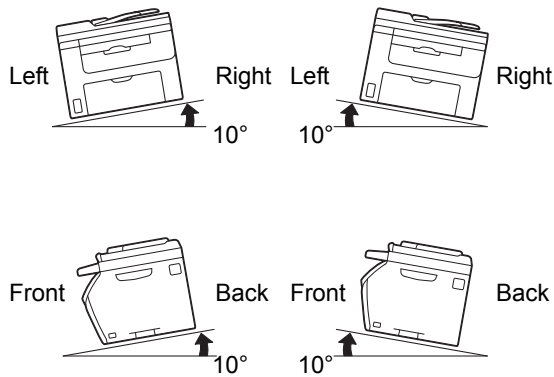


DocuPrint CM215 b:





Do not incline the product at more than 10 degree angle. Otherwise, it may fall over and cause injuries.



The illustrations show the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.



To bundle wires and cables, always use the cable ties and spiral tubes that Fuji Xerox supplies. Otherwise, it may cause some defects.

Others



To keep this product in a good performance and condition, always use it in the following environment:

- Temperature: 10 – 32 °C
- Humidity: 10 – 85%

When the product is left in a chilly room and the room is rapidly warmed up by heater, dew condensation may form inside the product and cause a partial deletion on printing.

■ Operational Safety

WARNING



The operator's product maintenance procedures are described in the customer documentation supplied with this product. Do not carry out any other maintenance procedures not described in the documentation.



This product features safety design not to allow operators access to hazard areas. The hazard areas are isolated from operators by covers or protectors which require a tool to remove. To prevent electric shock and injuries, never remove those covers and protectors.



To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, switch off and unplug the product promptly in the following conditions, then contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

- The product emits smoke or its surface is unusually hot.
- The product emits unusual noise or odor.
- The power cord is cracked or worn down.
- A circuit breaker, fuse or any other safety device becomes activated.
- Any liquid is spilled into the product.
- The product is soaked in water.
- Any part of the product is damaged.



Do not insert any object into slots or openings of this product.

Do not put any of the followings on the product:

- Liquid container such as flower vases or coffee cups
- Metal parts such as staples or clips
- Heavy objects

If liquid is spilled over or metal parts are slipped into the product, it may cause electric shock or a fire accident.



Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.



When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners to avoid catching fire and explosion.



Never play the CD-ROM supplied with the product on an audio player. Always use a CD-ROM player. Otherwise, large sound may damage audio players or your ears.

CAUTION



Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product.

To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.



Keep electrical and mechanical safety interlocks active. Keep the safety interlocks away from magnetic materials. Magnetic materials may accidentally activate the product and cause injuries or electric shock.



Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.



Ventilate well during extended operation or mass copying. It may affect the office air environment due to odor such as ozone in a poorly ventilated room.

Provide proper ventilation to ensure the comfortable and safe environment.

■ Consumable

WARNING



Store all consumables in accordance with the instructions given on its package or container.



Never use a vacuum cleaner for spilled toner and residual toner in this product, toner cartridge or toner bottle.

It may catch fire by electric sparks inside a vacuum cleaner and cause explosion.

Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off the spills. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.

If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.

CAUTION



Keep drum cartridges (or drum if not a cartridge type) and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.



When replacing drum cartridges (or drum if not a cartridge type) and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.



If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.

If you get toner particles in the eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.

If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.

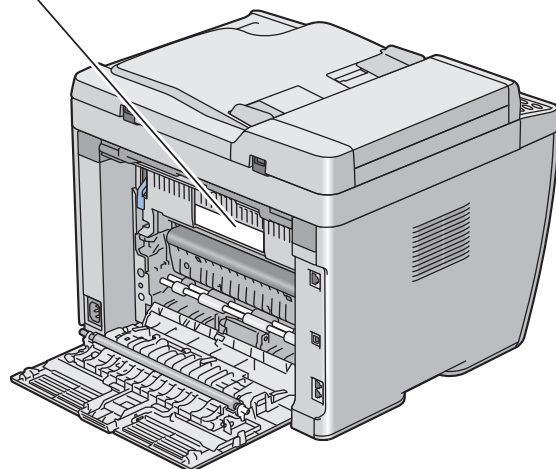
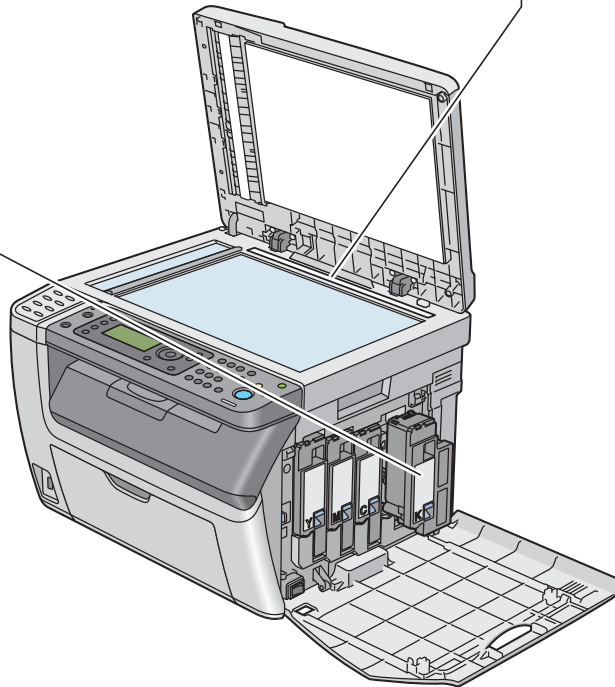
If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

■ Warning and Caution Labels

Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product.

To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.

• **CAUTION** Do not stare at light. It may cause discomfort or irritation to your eyes. **注意** 请勿直视曝光光源，以免造成眼睛疲劳及伤害眼睛。 **ข้อควรระวัง** ห้ามจ้องมองแสงไฟ เพราะอาจทำให้ปวดหรือระคายเคืองดวงตา
注意 ランプの光を長時間見ないでください。目の疲れや痛みの原因となることがあります。 **注意** 請勿直視曝光燈光源，以免造成眼睛疲勞及傷害眼睛。 **주의** 광원을 보지 않아 주십시오. 눈의 피로 또는 통증의 원인이 될 수 있습니다.



The illustrations show the DocuPrint CM215 fw.

Environment

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.
- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges. Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Regulation

■ Radio Frequency Emissions (Class B)



This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to the International Standard for Electromagnetic Interference (CISPR Publ. 22) and Radiocommunications Act 1992 in Australia/New Zealand. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning this product off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between this product and the receiver.
- Connect this product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes and modifications to this product not specifically approved by Fuji Xerox may void the user's authority to operate this product.

■ Product Safety Certification (UL, CB)

This product is certified by the following agency using the safety standards listed.

Agency	Standard
TUV-Rheinland	IEC60950-1:ed. 2

Illegal Copies and Printouts

Copying or printing certain documents may be illegal in your country. Penalties of fines or imprisonment may be imposed on those found guilty. The following are examples of items that may be illegal to copy or print in your country.

- Currency
- Banknotes and checks
- Bank and government bonds and securities
- Passports and identification cards
- Copyright material or trademarks without the consent of the owner
- Postage stamps and other negotiable instruments

This list is not inclusive and no liability is assumed for either its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, contact your legal counsel.

Security Precautions for Using Wireless LAN Products

One of the advantages of wireless LAN is that connections are possible anywhere within the range of the radio waves. This is possible because instead of cables, wireless LAN uses radio waves to connect computers and wireless access points.

On the other hand, the radio waves get through obstructions (such as walls) within the range to reach every place, so the following problems may occur if security is not set up.

• **Transmissions Can Be Accessed Covertly**

It is possible for criminal outsiders to intentionally intercept the transmissions to covertly access the information in the transmissions.

- IDs, passwords, credit card numbers, and other personal information
- Content of mail

• **Unauthorized Access**

Criminal outsiders may access private or company networks without authorization to do the following.

- Steal personal or secret information (information leak)
- Impersonate someone and send false information (impersonation)
- Alter intercepted transmissions and distribute them (falsification)
- Infect computers with a virus to destroy data or systems (vandalism)

You can reduce the possibility of these problems by doing the setting up security for your wireless LAN product.

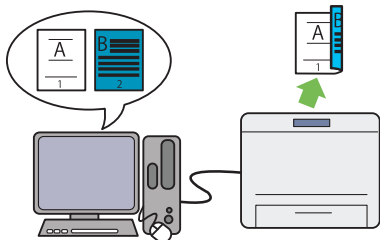
Wireless LAN cards and wireless access points conventionally have security arrangements to prevent these types of problems.

We recommend that customers fully understand the problem of using the product without security and that they determine to and take the responsibility for setting up security for their product.

Product Features

This section describes the product features and indicates their links.

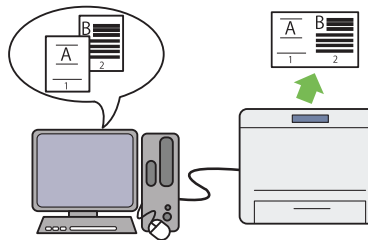
Manual Duplex Print



The Duplex print feature allows you to print two or more pages on the front and back sides of a single sheet of paper manually. This feature helps reduce paper consumption.

For more information, see ["Manual Duplex Printing" on page 147](#).

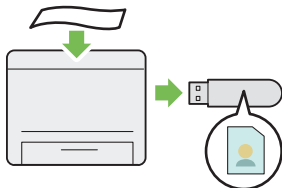
N-Up (2-in-1 Copy)



The N-Up copy feature allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature helps reduce paper consumption.

For more information, see ["N-Up" on page 186](#).

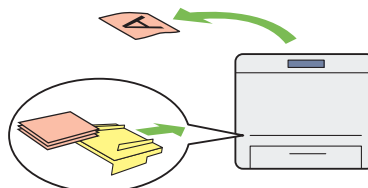
Scanning to a USB Storage Device



You do not need a computer to connect your USB storage device to save the scanned data. Insert your USB storage device in the port on the printer, and save the scanned data directly to your USB storage device.

For more information, see ["Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 226](#).

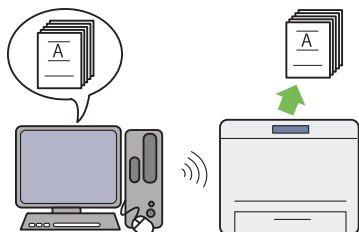
Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)



Print media loaded on the PSI is given precedence over those loaded on the multipurpose feeder (MPF). Using the PSI allows you to use other types or sizes of print media preferentially over the regular print media loaded on the MPF.

For more information, see ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#).

Printing Through Wireless Connection (Wireless Print) (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

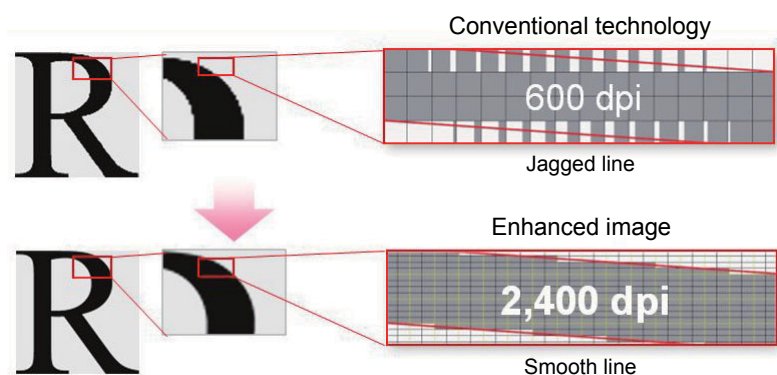


The Wireless LAN feature on your printer allows you to install the printer at any location, and enables printing without a wired connection to your computer.

The Wireless LAN feature is unavailable depending on the region you purchased.

For more information, see ["Wireless Connection \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 75](#).

Fuji Xerox Imaging Technology



This printer reproduces smooth lines and gradations by 1200 x 2400 dpi high-resolution LED print heads and Micro Accurate Control Screen (MACS) Technology.

In addition, the color registration of each toner is corrected with ultra high precision through a digital process by Image Registration Control Technology (IReCT).

Specifications

This chapter lists the main specifications of the printer. Note that the specifications of the product may change without prior notice.



NOTE:




- Some features are not available on some models.

This chapter includes:

- ["Copy Function" on page 34](#)
- ["Print Function" on page 37](#)
- ["Scan Function" on page 38](#)
- ["Fax Function \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 40](#)
- ["Direct Fax Function \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 41](#)

Copy Function

Type	Console
Memory	128 MB
HDD	—
Color Capability	Full color
Scanning Resolution	DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw: Document glass: 600 × 600 dpi Automatic document feeder: 600 × 300 dpi DocuPrint CM215 b: Document glass: 600 × 600 dpi
Printing Resolution	Output resolution: 1200 × 2400 dpi Data processing resolution: 600 × 600 dpi
Halftone/Printable Colors	256 color gradation for each color (16,700,000 colors)
Warm-up Time	31 seconds or less* *: The values are based on a room temperature of 22 °C and on the factory default setting. IMPORTANT: • It may take longer due to the image quality adjustment.
Original Paper Size	DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw: Document glass: The maximum size is 215.9 × 297 mm for both sheets and books. Automatic document feeder: The maximum size is 215.9 × 355.6 mm. DocuPrint CM215 b: Document glass: The maximum size is 215.9 × 297 mm for both sheets and books.
Output Paper Size	Multipurpose feeder: Maximum: Legal Minimum: 76.2 × 127 mm (3 × 5") Priority sheet inserter: Maximum: Legal Minimum: 76.2 × 190.5 mm (3 × 7.5") Image loss width: Top edge, 4 mm or less; bottom edge, 4 mm or less; left and right edges, 4 mm or less
Output Paper Weight	Multipurpose feeder/Priority sheet inserter: 60 – 163 gsm IMPORTANT: • Use paper recommended by Fuji Xerox. Copying may not be performed correctly depending on the conditions.
First Copy Output Time	Monochrome: 24 seconds (for A4  /monochrome mode) Color: 40 seconds (for A4  /color mode)
Reduction/Enlargement	Size-for-Size: 1:1 ± 1.3% Preset %: 1:0.500, 1:0.707, 1:0.816, 1:1.225, 1:1.414, 1:2.000 Variable %: 1:0.25 – 1:4.00 (1% increments)

Continuous Copy Speed	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:</p> <p>Document glass:</p> <p>Monochrome:</p> <p>A4: 15 sheets/minute</p> <p>Color:</p> <p>A4: 12 sheets/minute</p> <p>Automatic document feeder:</p> <p>Monochrome:</p> <p>A4: 10 sheets/minute</p> <p>Color:</p> <p>A4: 2 sheets/minute</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 b:</p> <p>Document glass:</p> <p>Monochrome:</p> <p>A4: 15 sheets/minute</p> <p>Color:</p> <p>A4: 12 sheets/minute</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment. • The performance may be reduced depending on the paper type or paper tray.
Paper Tray Capacity	<p>Standard:</p> <p>150 sheets (Multipurpose feeder) + 10 sheets (Priority sheet inserter)</p> <p>Maximum paper capacity:</p> <p>160 sheets (standard)</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)
Continuous Copy	<p>99 images</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The machine may pause temporarily to perform image stabilization.
Output Tray Capacity	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:</p> <p>Center output tray:</p> <p>Approximately 100 sheets (A4 )</p> <p>Document output tray:</p> <p>Approximately 15 sheets (A4 )</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 b:</p> <p>Center output tray:</p> <p>Approximately 100 sheets (A4 )</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)
Power Supply	AC 220 – 240 V ± 10%/110 – 127 V ± 10%, 5/7 A for both 50/60 Hz ± 3 Hz

Power Consumption	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:</p> <p>Maximum power consumption: 810 W</p> <p>Low Power mode: 11 W or less</p> <p>Sleep mode: 2 W or less</p> <p>Standby mode: 55 W or less</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 b:</p> <p>Maximum power consumption: 950 W</p> <p>Low Power mode: 16 W or less</p> <p>Sleep mode: 7 W or less</p> <p>Standby mode: 65 W or less</p>
Dimensions	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:</p> <p>Width 410 × Depth 389* × Height 337.5 mm</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 b:</p> <p>Width 410 × Depth 389* × Height 318 mm</p> <p>*: When the front cover is closed.</p>
Machine Weight	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:</p> <p>15.0 kg</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 b:</p> <p>14.3 kg</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The weight of paper is not included. • The weight of the toner cartridges are included.
Space Requirement	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:</p> <p>Width 879 × Depth 936.5* mm</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 b:</p> <p>Width 848 × Depth 936.5* mm</p> <p>*: When the front cover and rear cover are open.</p>

Print Function

Type	Built-in
Continuous Print Speed	Same as the Copy Function
Print Resolution	Output resolution: 1200 × 2400 dpi Data processing resolution: 600 × 600 dpi
PDL	— (Host-based)
Protocol (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f: Ethernet (standard): TCP/IP (LPD, Port9100, WSD)</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 fw: Ethernet (standard): TCP/IP (LPD, Port9100, WSD) IEEE802.11b/g (standard)</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> WSD stands for Web Services on Devices. WSD is available only on Windows Vista®, Windows® 7 or Windows® 8.
Operating System	<p>Standard: GDI driver</p> <p>Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows® 8, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 8 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012, Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For information about the latest supported OS, contact our Customer Support Center.
Connectivity	<p>DocuPrint CM215 f: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0 (Hi-Speed)</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 fw: Standard: Ethernet (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0 (Hi-Speed), IEEE802.11b/g</p> <p>DocuPrint CM215 b: Standard: USB 2.0 (Hi-Speed)</p>

Scan Function

Type	Color scanner
Original Paper Size	Same as the Copy Function
Scanning Resolution	1200 × 1200 dpi, 600 × 600 dpi, 300 × 300 dpi, 200 × 200 dpi
Scanning Halftone	Monochrome : 8 bit Color : 24 bit
Scanning Speed (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	Monochrome : 10 sheets/minute Color : 2 sheets/minute IMPORTANT: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The scanning speed varies depending on documents.
Connectivity	DocuPrint CM215 f: Standard: Ethernet 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T, USB 1.1/2.0 DocuPrint CM215 fw: Standard: Ethernet 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T, USB 1.1/2.0, IEEE802.11b/g DocuPrint CM215 b: Standard: USB 1.1/2.0

<p>Scan to PC</p>	<p>Protocol (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only): TCP/IP (SMB, FTP)</p> <p>Operating System:</p> <p>Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows® 8, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 8 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012, Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site. <p>File Format:</p> <p>TIFF JPEG PDF (v 1.6)</p>
<p>Scan to e-mail (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)</p>	<p>Protocol: TCP/IP (SMTP, POP3)</p> <p>File Format:</p> <p>Monochrome binary: TIFF, JPEG, PDF</p> <p>Gray scale/full color: TIFF, JPEG, PDF</p>

Fax Function (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Send Document Size	Document glass: Maximum: A4/Letter Automatic document feeder: Maximum: Legal
Recording Paper Size	Maximum: Legal Minimum: A4/Letter
Transmission Time	3 seconds IMPORTANT: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When transmitting an A4 size 700-character document in the standard quality (8 x 3.85 lines/mm) and high speed mode (28.8 kbps or above: JBIG). This is only the transmission speed for image information and does not include the controlling time for the communication. Note that the actual transmission time depends on the content of documents, the machine that the recipient uses, and the status of the communication line.
Transmission Mode	ITU-T Super G3/G3 ECM/G3
Scanning Resolution	Standard: 203 × 98 dpi (8 × 3.85 dots/mm) Fine: 203 × 196 dpi (8 × 7.7 dots/mm) Super Fine: 203 × 392 dpi (8 × 15.4 dots/mm) Ultra Fine: 406 × 392 dpi (16 × 15.4 dots/mm)
Coding Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Transmission Speed	G3:33.6/31.2/28.8/26.4/24.0/21.6/19.2/16.8/14.4/12.0/9.6/7.2/4.8/2.4 kbps
No. of Fax Lines	PSTN, PBX. Leased line (3.4KHz/2-wire) RJ-11, 1 line

Direct Fax Function (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Document Size	A4, Letter, Folio, Legal
Transmission Speed	Same as the Fax Function
Transmission Resolution	<p>Standard: 203 × 98 dpi (8 × 3.85 dots/mm)</p> <p>High Quality: 203 × 196 dpi (8 × 7.7 dots/mm)</p> <p>Superfine: 203 × 392 dpi (8 × 15.4 dots/mm)</p> <p>Super-High Image Quality: 406 × 392 dpi (16 × 15.4 dots/mm)</p>
Applicable Lines	Same as the Fax Function
Operating System	<p>Microsoft® Windows® XP, Microsoft® Windows Vista®, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008, Microsoft® Windows® 7, Microsoft® Windows® 8, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 8 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012, Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8</p> <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site.

Basic Operation

This chapter includes:

- ["Main Components" on page 44](#)
- ["Turning On the Printer" on page 51](#)
- ["Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 52](#)
- ["Printing a Panel Settings Page" on page 53](#)
- ["Power Saver Mode" on page 54](#)

Main Components

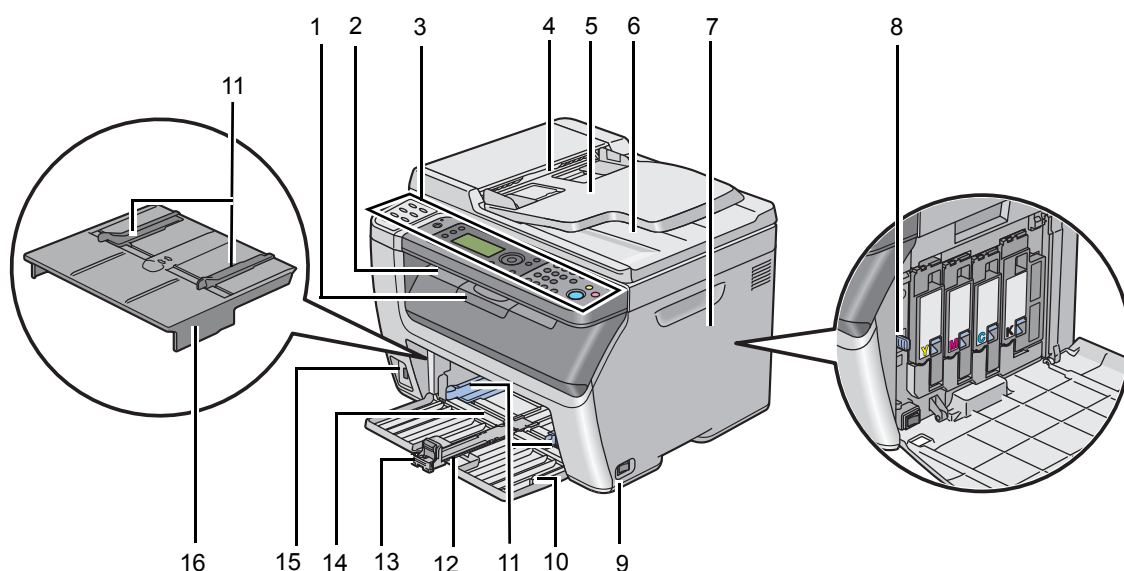
This section provides an overview of your printer.

This section includes:

- ["Front View" on page 44](#)
- ["Rear View" on page 46](#)
- ["Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\) \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 47](#)
- ["Operator Panel" on page 48](#)

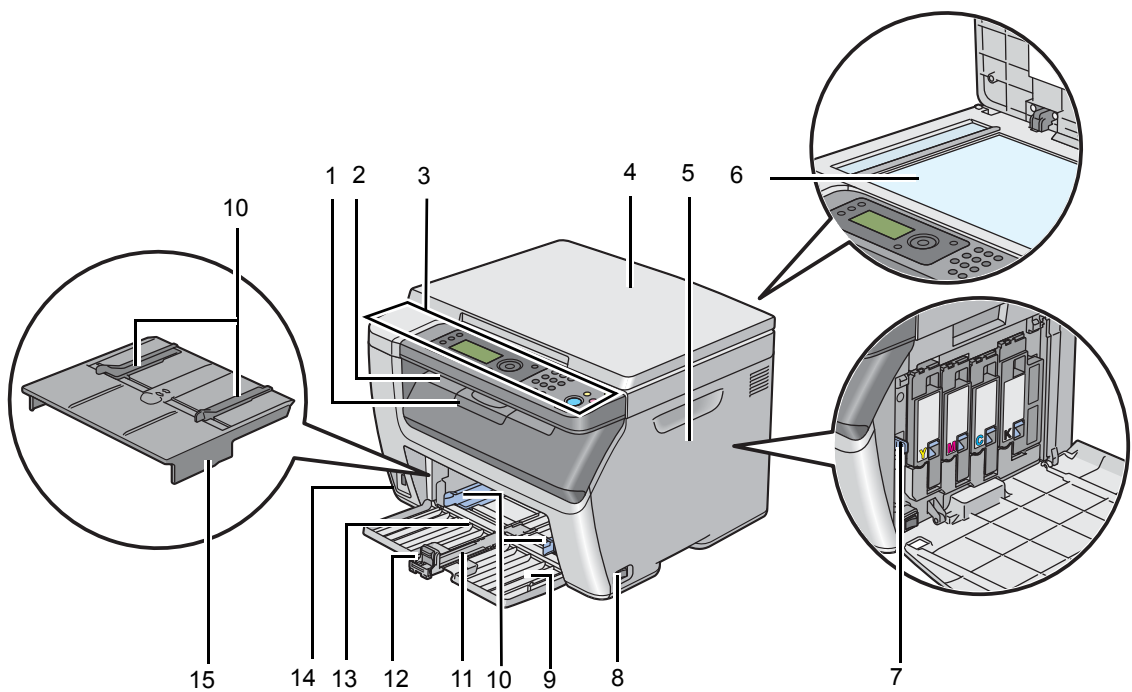
■ Front View

DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw



1	Output Tray Extension	2	Center Output Tray
3	Operator Panel	4	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
5	Document Feeder Tray	6	Document Output Tray
7	Toner Access Cover	8	Print Head Cleaning Rod
9	Power Switch	10	Front Cover
11	Paper Width Guides	12	Slide Bar
13	Length Guide	14	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)
15	USB Drive	16	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

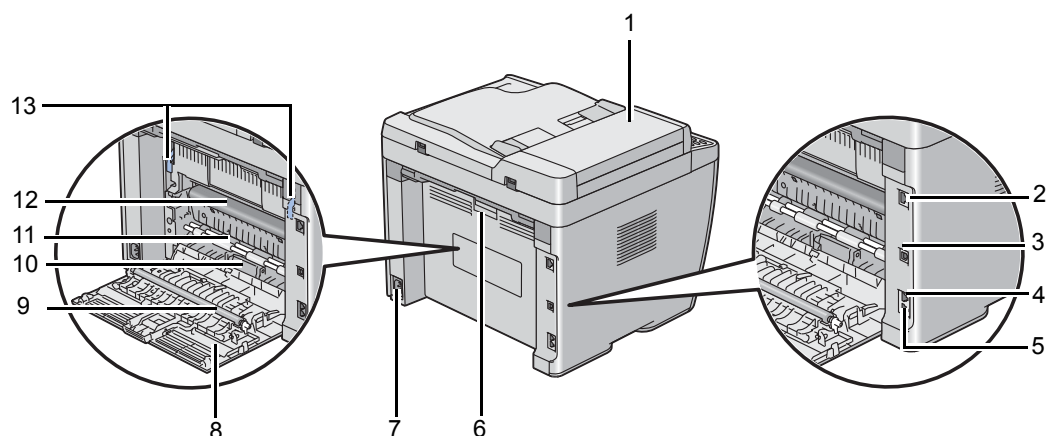
DocuPrint CM215 b



1	Output Tray Extension	2	Center Output Tray
3	Operator Panel	4	Document Cover
5	Toner Access Cover	6	Document Glass
7	Print Head Cleaning Rod	8	Power Switch
9	Front Cover	10	Paper Width Guides
11	Slide Bar	12	Length Guide
13	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	14	USB Drive
15	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)		

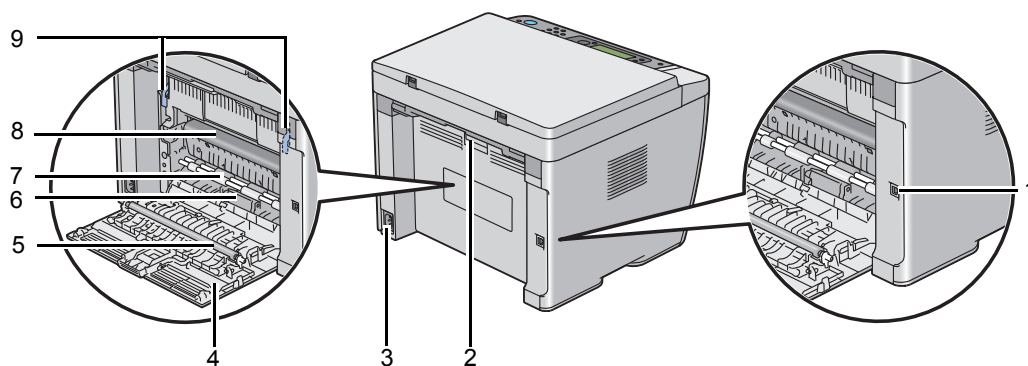
■ Rear View

DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw



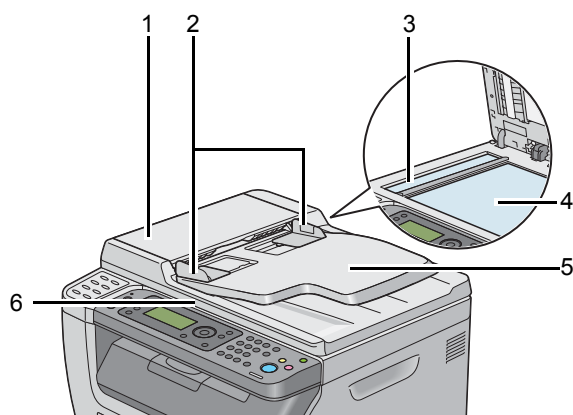
1 ADF Cover	2 Ethernet Port
3 USB Port	4 Wall Jack Connector
5 Phone Connector	6 Rear Cover Handle
7 Power Connector	8 Rear Cover
9 Transfer Roller	10 Paper Chute
11 Paper Feed Roller	12 Transfer Belt
13 Levers	

DocuPrint CM215 b



1 USB Port	2 Rear Cover Handle
3 Power Connector	4 Rear Cover
5 Transfer Roller	6 Paper Chute
7 Paper Feed Roller	8 Transfer Belt
9 Levers	

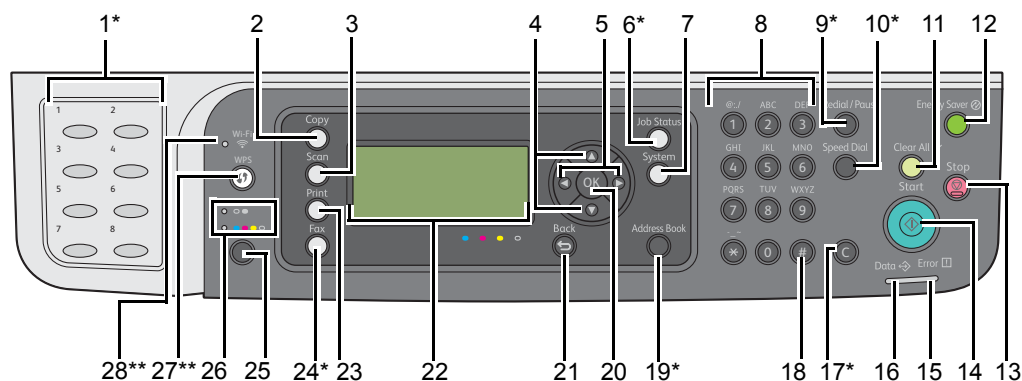
■ Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)



- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 | ADF Cover |
| 2 | Document Guides |
| 3 | ADF Glass |
| 4 | Document Glass |
| 5 | Document Feeder Tray |
| 6 | Document Cover |

■ Operator Panel





The operator panel has a 4-line by 28-character liquid crystal display (LCD), light-emitting diodes (LED), control buttons, one-touch buttons, and numeric keypad, which allow you to control the printer. (The one-touch buttons are available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)



*: This button/LED is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.

**: This button/LED is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 fw.


1*	One-touch buttons	Calls up the stored fax number registered in the Address Book. The first eight fax numbers in the Address Book are assigned to the buttons in row order, starting from the top corner.
2	Copy button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Copy menu.
3	Scan button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Scan menu.
4	▲ ▼ buttons	Moves a cursor or highlight up or down.
5	◀ ▶ buttons	Moves a cursor or highlight left or right.
6*	Job Status button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Job Status menu.
7	System button/LED	Moves to the top level of the System menu.
8	Numeric keypad	DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enters characters and numbers. DocuPrint CM215 b <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enters numbers.
9*	Redial/Pause button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-dials a telephone number. • Inserts a pause during dialing.
10*	Speed Dial button	Calls up a stored telephone number.
11	⚡ (Clear All) button	Resets the current setting, and returns to the top level of each service menu.
12	⏻ (Energy Saver) button/LED	Lights up in the Sleep mode. Press this button to exit the Sleep mode.
13	⏹ (Stop) button	Cancels the current processing or pending job.
14	▶ (Start) button	Starts a job.
15	⚠ (Error) LED	Lights up when the printer has an error.
16	📡 (Data) LED	Lights up for incoming, outgoing, or pending jobs.
17*	C (Clear) button	Deletes characters and numbers.

18	# button (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	Enters characters "(space) & ()".
	C (Clear) button (DocuPrint CM215 b only)	Deletes numbers.
19*	Address Book button	Pressing this button at the Fax menu, moves to the top level of the Address Book menu.
20	 button	Confirms the entry of values.
21	 (Back) button	Returns to the previous screen.
22	LCD Panel	Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
23	Print button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Print menu.
24*	Fax button/LED	Moves to the top level of the Fax menu.
25	Color Mode button	Switches the color mode.
26	B&W/Color LED	Lights up to indicate which color mode is selected.
27**	 (WPS) button	Starts Wi-Fi Protected Setup® (Push Button Configuration).
28**	 (Wi-Fi) LED	Lights up when wireless connection is established, and blinks in certain conditions.

*: This button/LED is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.

**: This button/LED is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 fw.

NOTE:






- Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to press the  button to save the current entry or setting.
- For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, see ["Using the Numeric Keypad" on page 320](#) for details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters.



Status of Wi-Fi LED (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

This section describes when the  (**Wi-Fi**) LED lights up or blinks.

See also:

- ["Wireless Problems \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 364](#)

 (Wi-Fi) LED		Wi-Fi settings*	Printer Status	Error Message
	Off	N/A	Connected to the network via Ethernet cable; Wi-Fi settings are not available when an Ethernet cable is connected to the printer.	—
		Off	—	—
		On	The printer enters the Power Saver mode	—
	On	On	Wireless link established	—
	Blinking normal	On	Searching for wireless LAN access point or router	—
	Blinking slowly	On	Searching/Connecting with WPS access point or router during wireless operation	—

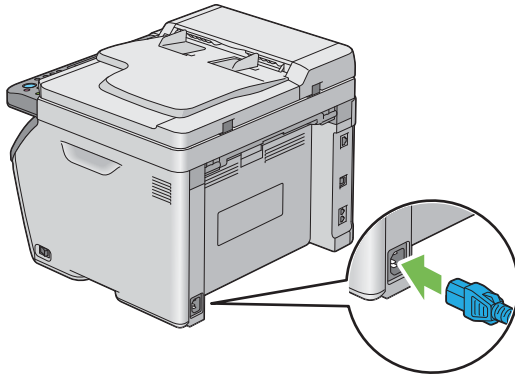
 (Wi-Fi) LED		Wi-Fi settings*	Printer Status	Error Message
	Blinking fast	On	No wireless LAN access point or router on which the WPS operation is being performed found within the specified time	Wireless Error 016-920 System Setup Fail
			WPS Connection failure; Security setting of the wireless LAN access point or router is WEP, which is unsupported on WPS.	Wireless Error 016-921 System Setup Fail
*: You can enable/disable the Wi-Fi settings. For more information, see "Wi-Fi (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)" on page 282 .				

Turning On the Printer

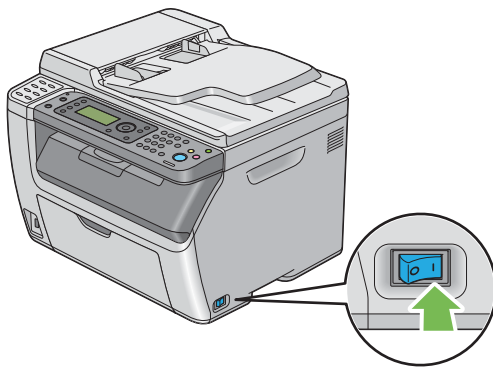
IMPORTANT:

- Do not use extension cords or power strips.
- The printer should not be connected to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) system.

- 1 Connect the power cord to the power connector on the rear of your printer (see ["Rear View" on page 46](#)).



- 2 Connect the other end of the cord to the power source.
- 3 Turn on the printer.



NOTE:

- When you turn on the printer for the first time, follow the on-screen instructions on the LCD panel to configure the initial settings of your printer.

See also:

- ["Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 52](#)

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel












You need to set the printer language, clock date, and time when you turn on the printer for the first time. (Clock date and time are available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

When you turn on the printer, a wizard appears on the LCD panel. Follow the step below to set the initial settings.


NOTE:

- If you do not start configuring the initial settings, `Select Function` appears on the LCD panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling `Power On Wizard` on the operator panel if needed.
For more information about the operator panel, see ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 274](#).

• For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw

- 1 Select the language you want to use on the operator panel, and then press the  button.
- 2 Press the  button to start setting the region.
- 3 Select your region, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the appropriate time zone, and then press the  button.
- 5 Specify the current date, and then press the  button.
- 6 Specify the current time, and then press the  button.
- 7 Press the  button for fax setup.
If you want to skip the fax setup, press the  (**Start**) button.
- 8 Enter your fax number, and then press the  button.
- 9 Enter a name, and then press the  button.
- 10 Press the  button to complete the initial settings on the operator panel.

• For the DocuPrint CM215 b

- 1 Select the language you want to use on the operator panel, and then press the  button.



Printing a Panel Settings Page

The Panel Settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.

■ Using the Operator Panel

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Report / List**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Panel Settings**, and then press the  button.
The Panel Settings page is printed.

■ Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.


NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.


- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click the **Panel Settings** button.
The Panel Settings page is printed.

Power Saver Mode



The printer has a power saving feature which reduces power consumption during periods of inactivity. This feature operates in two modes: Low Power mode and Sleep mode. As delivered, the printer switches to the Low Power mode five minutes after the last job is finished. The printer then switches to the Sleep mode after another six minutes of inactivity. When the printer is in the Low Power mode, the LCD backlight turns off. In the Sleep mode, the  (**Energy Saver**) button lights up. The LCD panel goes blank and displays nothing.

The factory default settings of five minutes (Low Power mode) and six minutes (Sleep mode) are changeable within the range of 5 to 30 minutes (Low Power mode) and 1 to 6 minutes (Sleep mode). The printer returns to the ready-to-print state in about 25 seconds when re-activated.

■ Exiting the Power Saver Mode

The printer automatically exits the Power Saver mode when it receives a job from a computer. To manually exit the Low Power mode, press any button on the operator panel. To exit the Sleep mode, press the  (**Energy Saver**) button.

NOTE:

- When the printer is in the Sleep mode, all buttons on the operator panel except for the  (**Energy Saver**) button do not function. To use the buttons on the operator panel, press the  (**Energy Saver**) button to exit the Power Saver mode.

See also:

- ["Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode" on page 318](#)

Printer Management Software

Use the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that is shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

This chapter includes:

- ["Print and Scan Drivers" on page 56](#)
- ["CentreWare Internet Services \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 57](#)
- ["Printer Setting Utility \(Windows Only\)" on page 58](#)
- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 59](#)
- ["Launcher \(Windows Only\)" on page 60](#)
- ["Address Book Editor \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 62](#)
- ["Express Scan Manager" on page 63](#)
- ["Setup Disk Creation Tool \(Windows Only\)" on page 64](#)
- ["DocuWorks \(Windows Only\) \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 65](#)

Print and Scan Drivers

To access all of your printer's features, install the print and scan drivers from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

- The print driver enables your computer and printer to communicate and provides access to your printer features.
- The scan driver enables you to scan images directly to your personal computer and place scanned images directly into an application via USB or the network. (The network feature is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

The scan driver is installed with your print driver. It is available for Microsoft® Windows® and Mac OS X.

See also:

- ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 89](#)
- ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 120](#)

CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

This section provides information on the CentreWare Internet Services.

The CentreWare Internet Services is a hypertext transfer protocol (HTTP)-based web page service that is accessed through your web browser.

Using the CentreWare Internet Services you can confirm the printer status, and change the printer configuration options easily. Anyone on your network can access the printer using the CentreWare Internet Services. In administrative mode you can change the configuration of the printer, set up your fax directories, and manage your printer settings without leaving your computer.

NOTE:

- Users who are not given passwords by the administrator can still view the configuration settings in user mode. They will not be able to save or apply any changes to the current configuration and settings.
- For details on the menu items of the CentreWare Internet Services, refer to the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

■ Creating an Administrative Password

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Click the **Properties** tab.
- 4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **Administrator Settings**.
- 5 Select **Enabled** for **Administrator Mode**.
- 6 In the **Administrator Login ID** field, enter a name for the administrator.

NOTE:

- The default ID and password are "11111" and "x-admin" respectively.
- 7 In the **Administrator Password** and **Re-enter Password** fields, enter a password for the administrator.
 - 8 In the **Maximum Login Attempts** field, enter the number of login attempts allowed. Setting to 0 does not limit the number of login attempts.
 - 9 Click **Apply**.

Your new password has been set and anyone with the administrator name and password can log in and change the printer configuration and settings.

Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The Printer Setting Utility is installed with your print driver.

The Printer Setting Utility allows you to view or specify the system settings. You can also diagnose the system settings by using the Printer Setting Utility.

The Printer Setting Utility consists of the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

NOTE:

- The **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on the Printer Setting Utility when **Panel Lock** is set on the printer. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

The SimpleMonitor is installed with your print driver.

You can check the printer status with the SimpleMonitor. Double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Printer Selection** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection port, printer status, and model name. Check the column **Status** to know the current status of your printer.

Settings button: Displays the **Settings** window and allows you to modify the SimpleMonitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Printer Selection** window. The **Printer Status** window appears.

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches automatically when an error occurs. You can specify the conditions for starting the **Printer Status** window in **Printer Status Window Properties**.

To change the pop-up settings for the **Printer Status** window:

- 1 Right-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen.
- 2 Select **Printer Status Window Properties**.
The **Printer Status Window Properties** window appears.
- 3 Select the type of the pop-up and then click **OK**.

You can also check the toner level of your printer and the job information on the **Printer Status** window.

Launcher (Windows Only)

The Launcher is installed with your print driver.

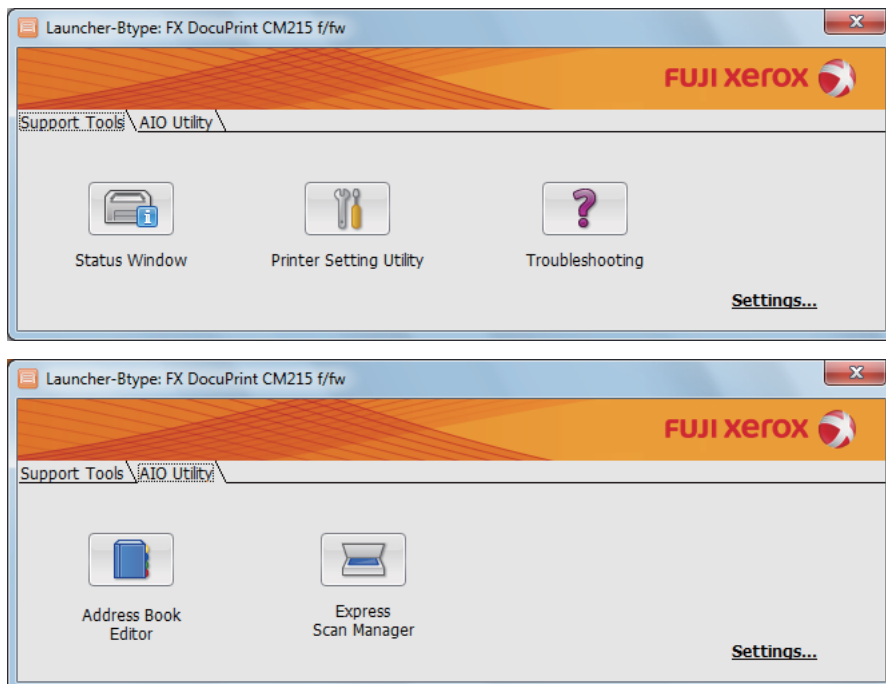
Using the **Launcher-Btype** window, you can open the Printer Status window, Printer Setting Utility, Troubleshooting Guide, Address Book Editor, and Express Scan Manager. (The Address Book Editor is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

To open the **Launcher-Btype** window:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Launcher**.

The **Launcher-Btype** window appears.



The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.

- 2** The **Launcher-Btype** window provides several buttons; **Status Window**, **Printer Setting Utility**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, and **Express Scan Manager**. (The **Address Book Editor** is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

To exit, click the **X** button at the top-right of the window.

For details, click the **Help** button/icon of each application.

Status Window	Opens the Printer Status window. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 59
Printer Setting Utility	Opens the Printer Setting Utility. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)" on page 58
Troubleshooting	Opens the Troubleshooting Guide, which allows you to resolve issues by yourself.
Address Book Editor (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	Opens the Address Book Editor, which allows you to add and edit Address Book entries. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Address Book Editor (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)" on page 62
Express Scan Manager	Opens the Express Scan Manager. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Express Scan Manager" on page 63

Address Book Editor (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

The Address Book Editor is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X. The Address Book Editor provides a convenient interface for modifying the printer's Address Book entries. With it you can add:

- Fax entries
- E-Mail entries
- Server entries

When you start the software, the Address Book Editor reads the printer's Address Book. You can add, edit, and delete entries. After making changes, you can then save the updated Address Book to the printer or to your computer.

Express Scan Manager

The Express Scan Manager is installed with your print driver. It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

The Express Scan Manager handles scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer via USB. When scan jobs are sent from the printer to the computer, the Express Scan Manager automatically manages the scan jobs.

Before scanning to your computer, start the Express Scan Manager and configure the output destination of the scanned image files.

Select **Open the image file** check box to display scanned files saved in the specified destination after scanning.

NOTE:

- When you separately install the Express Scan Manager from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*, you also need to install the scan driver from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

See also:

- ["Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application" on page 195](#)

Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only)

The Setup Disk Creation Tool program located in the **MakeDisk** folder of the **Utilities** folder on the *Software Pack CD-ROM* and the print driver located on the *Software Pack CD-ROM* are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved print driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and multiple-up (document settings)
- Watermarks

If you want to install the print driver with the same settings on multiple computers running on the same operating system, create a setup disk in a media or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the print driver.

- Install the print driver for your printer on the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

DocuWorks (Windows Only) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

When installing the DocuWorks, run the appropriate EXE file in the *DocuWorks document handling software*.

Windows supports the DocuWorks and the DocuWorks Viewer Light.

The DocuWorks is available only for Windows.

NOTE:

- For more information on the DocuWorks, refer to the readme file on the *DocuWorks document handling software*.

Printer Connection and Software Installation

This chapter includes:

- ["Overview of Printer Connection and Software Installation" on page 68](#)
- ["Connecting Your Printer" on page 71](#)
- ["Setting the IP Address \(for IPv4 Mode\) \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 83](#)
- ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 89](#)
- ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 120](#)

Overview of Printer Connection and Software Installation

Read this section to know the overall steps required for each connection method to complete the printer connection and software installation.

Select one of the following connection methods.

- USB connection
- Ethernet connection (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)
- Wireless connection (DocuPrint CM215 fw only)

NOTE:

- If the *Software Pack CD-ROM* is not available, you can download the latest driver from our Web Site:
<http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

■ USB Connection

• For Windows

- 1 Connect the printer and the computer with the USB cable.
Refer to ["USB Connection" on page 73](#).
- 2 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to ["Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software" on page 91](#).

• For Mac OS X

- 1 Connect the printer and the computer with the USB cable.
Refer to ["USB Connection" on page 73](#).
- 2 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 120](#).

■ Ethernet Connection (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

• For Windows

- 1 Connect the printer to a wired network.
Refer to ["Ethernet Connection \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 74](#).
- 2 Set the printer's IP address.
 - If DHCP is available on your network, refer to ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 84](#).
 - You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#).
- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 89](#).

• For Mac OS X

- 1 Connect the printer to a wired network.
Refer to ["Ethernet Connection \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 74](#).
- 2 Set the printer's IP address.
 - If DHCP is available on your network, refer to ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 84](#).
 - You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#).
- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.
Refer to ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 120](#).

■ Wireless Connection (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

• For Windows

- 1 Connect the printer to a wireless network.

Refer to ["Wireless Connection \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 75](#).

Perform the following steps as necessary.

If you set up wireless connection using the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*, the following steps are not necessary.

- 2 Set the printer's IP address.

- If DHCP is available on your network, refer to ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 84](#).
- You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#).

- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

Refer to ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 89](#).

• For Mac OS X

- 1 Connect the printer to a wireless network.

Refer to ["Wireless Connection \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 75](#).

- 2 Set the printer's IP address.

- If DHCP is available on your network, refer to ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 84](#).
- You can also manually set the printer's IP address by using the operator panel. Refer to ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#).

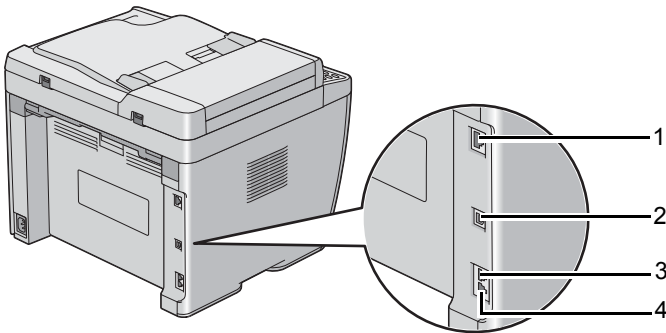
- 3 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.





Refer to ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 120](#).

Connecting Your Printer

The interface cables of your printer must meet the following requirements:

Connection Type	Connection Specifications
Ethernet (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX compatible
USB	USB2.0 compatible
Wireless (DocuPrint CM215 fw only)	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g
Wall Jack Connector (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	RJ11
Phone Connector (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	RJ11



1 Ethernet Port (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	
2 USB Port	
3 Wall Jack Connector (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	LINE 
4 Phone Connector (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	PHONE 

■ Available Features for Each Connection Type

Connect the printer via USB, Ethernet, or Wireless. A USB connection is a direct connection and is not used for networking. Ethernet and wireless connections are used for networking. Hardware and cabling requirements vary for the different connection methods. Ethernet cable and wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router are not included with your printer and must be purchased separately.

The available features for each connection type are shown in the following table.

• DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw

Connection Type	Available Feature
USB	<p>When connected via USB, you can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Instruct print jobs from a computer.• Scan and print an image into an application.• Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer.• Use the Address Book Editor to manage Address Book entries.• Use the Express Scan Manager to handle scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer.• Use the Printer Setting Utility to view, specify or diagnose the system settings. (Microsoft® Windows® only)• Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. (Windows only)
Ethernet	<p>When connected via Ethernet, you can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Instruct print jobs from a computer on the network.• Scan and print an image to a computer on the network.• Scan and print an image to an FTP server.• Scan to email.• Use the CentreWare Internet Services to view the printer status or specify the printer settings.• Use the Printer Setting Utility to view, specify or diagnose the system settings. (Windows only)• Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. (Windows only)
Wireless (DocuPrint CM215 fw only)	<p>When connected via Wireless, you can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Instruct print jobs from a computer on the network.• Scan and print an image to a computer on the network.• Scan and print an image to an FTP server.• Scan to email.• Use the CentreWare Internet Services to view the printer status or specify the printer settings.• Use the Printer Setting Utility to view, specify or diagnose the system settings. (Windows only)• Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. (Windows only)

• DocuPrint CM215 b

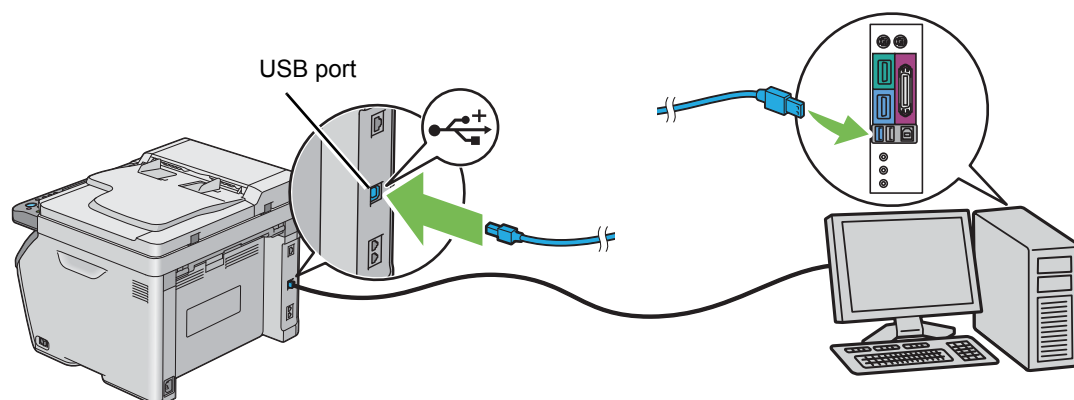
Connection Type	Available Feature
USB	<p>You can:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Instruct print jobs from a computer.• Scan and print an image into an application.• Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer.• Use the Express Scan Manager to handle scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer.• Use the Printer Setting Utility to view, specify or diagnose the system settings. (Windows only)• Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. (Windows only)

■ Connecting Printer to Your Computer

USB Connection

To connect the printer to a computer via USB:

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the power source.
- 2 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port at the rear of the printer and the other end of the cable into a USB port of the computer.



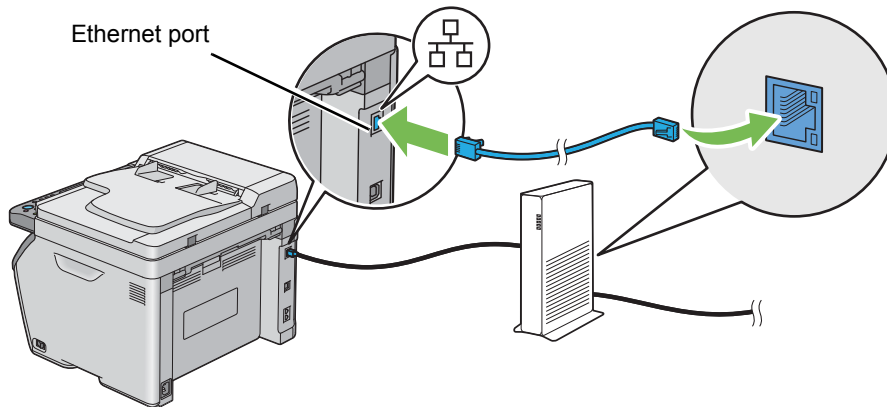
NOTE:

- Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB slot available on the keyboard.

Ethernet Connection (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

To connect the printer to a computer via Ethernet:

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and all cables have been disconnected.
- 2 Connect one end of the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port at the rear of the printer, and the other end to an Ethernet port of a router or hub.




NOTE:

- Connect the Ethernet cable, only if you need to setup a wired connection. Connecting the Ethernet cable stops some features or functions for Wireless network.

Wireless Connection (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

This section describes how to connect the printer to a computer via wireless network.

Confirm that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer and the  (Wi-Fi) LED is blinking before configuring the wireless connection.

IMPORTANT:

- The Wireless LAN feature is not available in all locations. Please check with your local Fuji Xerox representative for availability of wireless in your location.
- If you are using a method other than WPS to configure your wireless network settings, be sure to get the SSID and security information from a system administrator before starting the setup procedure.
- Be sure to configure necessary settings on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router before starting the printer setup. For information on the access point or router settings, refer to the manual supplied with the product.

The specifications of wireless setting function are described below:

Item	Specification
Connectivity	Wireless
Connectivity Standard	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g compliant
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11b mode: 11, 5.5, 2, 1 Mbps IEEE 802.11g mode: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA-PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES) (IEEE 802.1x attestation function of WPA 1x non-corresponds), Mixed Mode PSK
Certifications	Wi-Fi, WPA2.0 (Personal)
Wi-Fi Protected Setup® (WPS)*	Push Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)
*: WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed Mode PSK, WPA-PSK-AES, WPA2-PSK-AES, WPA-PSK-TKIP, Open (No Security)	

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

Using the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM* (Windows Only) (Recommended for initial setup)

Refer to ["Launching the Printer Setup Screen" on page 91](#).

WPS-PBC (Ⓜ (WPS) button)*¹

Refer to ["WPS-PBC \(WPS Button\)" on page 77](#).

WPS-PBC (Operator Panel Menu)*¹

Refer to ["WPS-PBC \(Operator Panel Menu\)" on page 78](#).

WPS-PIN*²

Refer to ["WPS-PIN" on page 79](#).

Auto SSID Setup

Refer to ["Auto SSID Setup" on page 80](#).


Manual SSID Setup

Refer to ["Manual SSID Setup" on page 81](#).



*1: WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by starting WPS-PBC on the printer with the Ⓜ (WPS) button or operator panel menu, and then pressing the button provided on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS-PBC.


*2: WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access point of your wireless router supports WPS.


• WPS-PBC (WPS Button)

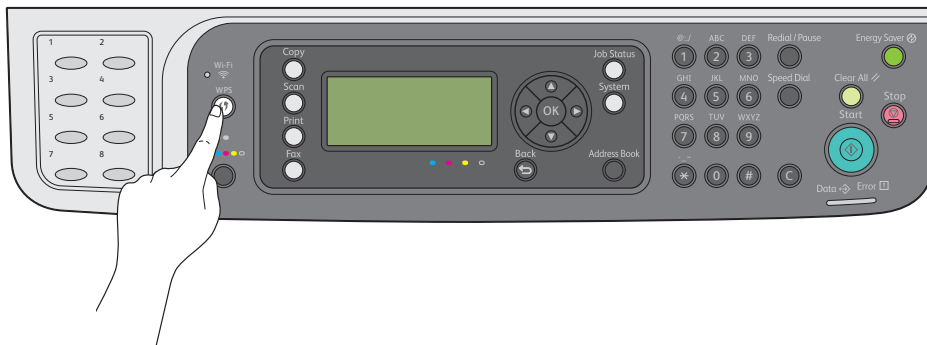
You can start WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) by pressing the  (WPS) button.

NOTE:

- WPS-PBC is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PBC.
- Before starting WPS-PBC with the  (WPS) button, confirm the position of the WPS button (button name may vary) on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. For information about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.
- The  (Wi-Fi) LED lights up or blinks to indicate the printer's wireless connection status. For more information, see ["Status of Wi-Fi LED \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 49](#). If a problem occurs or error messages are displayed on the LCD panel, see ["Wireless Problems \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 364](#).

- 1 Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the printer for two seconds.

Confirm that the  (Wi-Fi) LED starts to blink slowly and Press WPS Button on Router appears on the LCD panel.



- 2 Start the WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router within two minutes.







When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

• WPS-PBC (Operator Panel Menu)

You can start WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) from the operator panel.

NOTE:

- WPS-PBC is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PBC.
- Before starting WPS-PBC, confirm the position of the WPS button (button name may vary) on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. For information about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Network**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **WPS**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select **Push Button Control**, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select **Yes**, and then press the  button.
- 7 Confirm that the  (**Wi-Fi**) LED starts to blink slowly and **Press WPS Button on Router** appears, and then start the WPS-PBC on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router within two minutes.








When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

• WPS-PIN




The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

NOTE:


- WPS-PIN is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PIN.
- For WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `WPS`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `PIN Code`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Write down the displayed 8-digit PIN code, or select `Print PIN Code` and press the  button to print the PIN code.
- 7 Select `Start Configuration`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Confirm that `Please Wait... WPS AP Searching` appears.
- 9 Select the SSID of the access point you want to connect to, and then press the  button.
- 10 Confirm that `Please Wait... Wireless Setting` appears.
- 11 Enter the PIN code displayed on step 6 into the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router.
When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

• Auto SSID Setup

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the  button.

The printer automatically searches the access points on wireless network.

- 5 Select the desired access point, and then press the  button.


If the desired access point does not appear, go to ["Manual SSID Setup" on page 81](#).

NOTE:


- Some hidden SSID may not be displayed. If the SSID is not detected, turn on SSID broadcast from the access point.

- 6 Enter the passphrase or WEP key.

When the encryption type of the access point selected in step 5 is WPA, WPA2 or Mixed:

- Enter the passphrase, and then press the  button.

When the encryption type of the access point selected in step 5 is WEP:







- Enter the WEP key, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- A passphrase is an encryption key for WPA and WPA2 encryption which consists of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters. It may be described as a key on some access points or routers. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the access point or router.

When the setup is successful and the screen returns to `Select Function`, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.



• Manual SSID Setup

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Wireless Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Manual Setup`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Enter the SSID, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select the network mode from `Infrastructure` and `Ad-hoc` depending on your environment, and then press the  button.
If you select `Infrastructure`, proceed to step 8.
If you select `Ad-hoc`, proceed to step 9.
- 8 Select the encryption type from `Mixed Mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, `WPA2-PSK-AES`, or `WEP`.

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

To use `Mixed Mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, or `WPA2-PSK-AES` encryption:




- a Select `Mixed Mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, or `WPA2-PSK-AES`, and then press the  button.
- b Enter the passphrase, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- A passphrase is an encryption key for WPA and WPA2 encryption which consists of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters. It may be described as a key on some access points or routers. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the access point or router.

When the setup is successful and the screen returns to `Select Function`, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.




To use WEP encryption:

- a Select `WEP`, and then press the  button.
- b Enter the WEP key, and then press the  button.
- c Select the desired transmit key from `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`, and then press the  button.

When the setup is successful and the screen returns to `Select Function`, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

9 Select WEP for the encryption type.

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.
- a** Select `WEP`, and then press the  button.
- b** Enter the WEP key, and then press the  button.
- c** Select the desired transmit key from `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`, and then press the  button.

When the setup is successful and the screen returns to `Select Function`, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Setting the IP Address (for IPv4 Mode) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

This section describes how to set an IP address of the printer in IPv4 mode.

NOTE:

- When you set an IP address in IPv6 mode, use the CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services. To display the CentreWare Internet Services, use a link local address. The printer's link local address is listed in the System Settings page. See ["Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 88](#).

This section includes:

- ["Printer's TCP/IP and IP Addresses" on page 83](#)
- ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 84](#)
- ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#)
- ["Verifying the IP Settings" on page 87](#)
- ["Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 88](#)

■ Printer's TCP/IP and IP Addresses

If your computer is on a large network, contact your network administrator for the appropriate TCP/IP addresses and additional system settings information.

If you are creating your own small Local Area Network or connecting the printer directly to your computer using Ethernet, follow the procedure for automatically setting the printer's IP address.

Computers and printers primarily use TCP/IP protocols to communicate over an Ethernet network. With TCP/IP protocols, each printer and computer must have a unique IP address. It is important that the addresses are similar, but not the same; only the last digit needs to be different. For example, your printer can have the address 192.168.1.2 while your computer has the address 192.168.1.3. Another device can have the address 192.168.1.4.

Many networks have a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. A DHCP server automatically programs an IP address into every computer and printer on the network that is configured to use DHCP. A DHCP server is built into most cable and Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) routers. If you use a cable or DSL router, see your router's documentation for information on IP addressing.

■ Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address

The DHCP and AutoIP protocols are available for dynamically setting the printer's IP address. They are enabled by default in your printer.

You can turn on/off both protocols using the operator panel or the CentreWare Internet Services.

NOTE:

- You can print a report that includes the printer's IP address. For more information, refer to ["Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 88](#).

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 On the operator panel, press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select **Network**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select **IPv4**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Select **Get IP Address**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 7 Select **DHCP/AutoIP**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 8 Turn off and turn on the printer.

Using the CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
- 3 Select **Properties**.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP** from the **Protocol Settings** folder on the left navigation panel.
- 5 In the **IP Address Mode** field under **IPv4**, select the **DHCP/AutoIP** option.
- 6 Click the **Apply** button.
- 7 Click the **Reboot Machine** button to restart the printer.

■ Assigning an IP Address Manually













NOTE:





- Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.
- Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from 0.0.0.0 to 127.255.255.255 will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel or using the Printer Setting Utility.

For Windows, you can also assign the IP address to the printer using the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 On the operator panel, press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `TCP/IP`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `IPv4`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Get IP Address`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select `Panel`, and then press the  button.
- 8 Press the  (**Back**) button.
Confirm that `Get IP Address` is selected.
- 9 Select `IP Address`, and then press the  button.
The cursor is located at the first digit of the IP address.
- 10 Enter the value of the IP address using the numeric keypad.
- 11 Press the  button.
The next digit is selected.
- 12 Repeat steps 10 to 11 to enter all of the digits in the IP address, and then press the  button.
- 13 Press the  (**Back**) button.
Confirm that `IP Address` is selected.
- 14 Select `Subnet Mask`, and then press the  button.
The cursor is located at the first digit of the subnet mask.
- 15 Enter the value of the subnet mask using the numeric keypad.

- 16 Press the ► button.
The next digit is selected.
- 17 Repeat steps 15 to 16 to set subnet mask, and then press the  button.
- 18 Press the  (**Back**) button.
Confirm that Subnet Mask is selected.
- 19 Select Gateway Address, and then press the  button.
The cursor is located at the first three digit of the gateway address.
- 20 Enter the value of the gateway address using the numeric keypad.
- 21 Press the ► button.
The next digit is selected.
- 22 Repeat steps 20 to 21 to set gateway address, and then press the  button.
- 23 Turn off and turn on the printer.

See also:

- ["Operator Panel" on page 48](#)

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **TCP/IP Settings** page is displayed.
- 4 Select **Panel** from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway Address**.
- 5 Click the **Restart printer to apply new settings** button to take effect.

Using the Installer on the Software Pack CD-ROM (Windows Only)

You can assign the IP address to the printer when setting up the printer with the installer on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

When you use the Ethernet or the manual Wireless setup method, and `Get IP Address` is set to `DHCP/AutoIP` on the operator panel menu, the installer detects the printer by the automatically assigned IP address. You can set the IP address to the desired IP address by clicking the **Advanced** button on the **Configure Printer** screen while in the setup process.

See also:

- ["Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address" on page 84](#)

The IP address is assigned to your printer. To verify the setting, display the web browser on any computer connected to the network and enter the IP address into the address bar on the browser. If the IP address is set up correctly, the CentreWare Internet Services displays in your browser.

■ Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by printing the System Settings page or using the ping command.

Printing the System Settings Page

- 1 Print the System Settings page.

See also:

- ["Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 88](#)

- 2 Look under the **IPv4** heading on the **Wired Network** or **Wireless Network** section of the System Settings page to confirm that the IP address, subnet mask and gateway address are appropriate.

Using the Ping Command

To verify if the printer is active on the network, run the ping command in your computer.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**.
- 2 Enter "cmd", and then click **OK**.
A Command Prompt window is displayed.
- 3 Enter "ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx is the IP address of your printer), and then press the **Enter** key.
Receiving the reply from the printer IP address means that the printer is appropriately connected to the network.

■ Printing and Checking the System Settings Page

Print the System Settings page and check your printer's IP address.

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Report / list**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select **System Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
The System Settings page is printed.
- 4 On the **Wired Network** or **Wireless Network** section of the System Settings page, confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under the **IPv4** heading. If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.
If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#).

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click the **System Settings** button.
The System Settings page is printed.

If the IP address is **0.0.0.0** (the factory default) or **169.254.xx.xx**, an IP address has not been assigned.

See also:

- ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#)

Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows

This section includes:

- ["Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status \(for Network Connection Setup\) \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 89](#)
- ["Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software" on page 91](#)
- ["Using Installer to Install Software" on page 94](#)
- ["Installing the XML Paper Specification \(XPS\) Print Driver" on page 95](#)
- ["Setting Up for Web Services on Devices \(WSD\) \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 105](#)
- ["Setting Up for Shared Printing \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 108](#)



■ Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (for Network Connection Setup) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Before installing the print driver on your computer, check the IP address of your printer and change the firewall settings.

This section includes:

- ["Checking the IP Address for Your Printer" on page 89](#)
- ["Changing the Firewall Settings Before Installing Your Printer" on page 90](#)

Checking the IP Address for Your Printer

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Report / list`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
The System Settings page is printed.
- 4 Find the IP address under **Wired Network/Wireless Network** on the System Settings page.
If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.
If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see ["Assigning an IP Address Manually" on page 85](#).

Changing the Firewall Settings Before Installing Your Printer

You may need to change the firewall settings before installing the printer software. Contact your network administrator for more information.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 3 Click **System and Security**.
- 4 Click **Allow a program through Windows Firewall**.
- 5 Click **Change settings**.
- 6 Click **Allow another program**.
- 7 Click **Browse**.
- 8 Enter "D:\setup.exe" (in case your optical disk drive is D) in the **File name** text box, and then click **Open**.
- 9 Click **Add**.
- 10 Click **OK**.

■ Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software

NOTE:

- The following procedure sets up printer connection and then install the drivers and software. If you have already established printer connection, go to ["Using Installer to Install Software" on page 94](#) to install the print driver and software immediately.

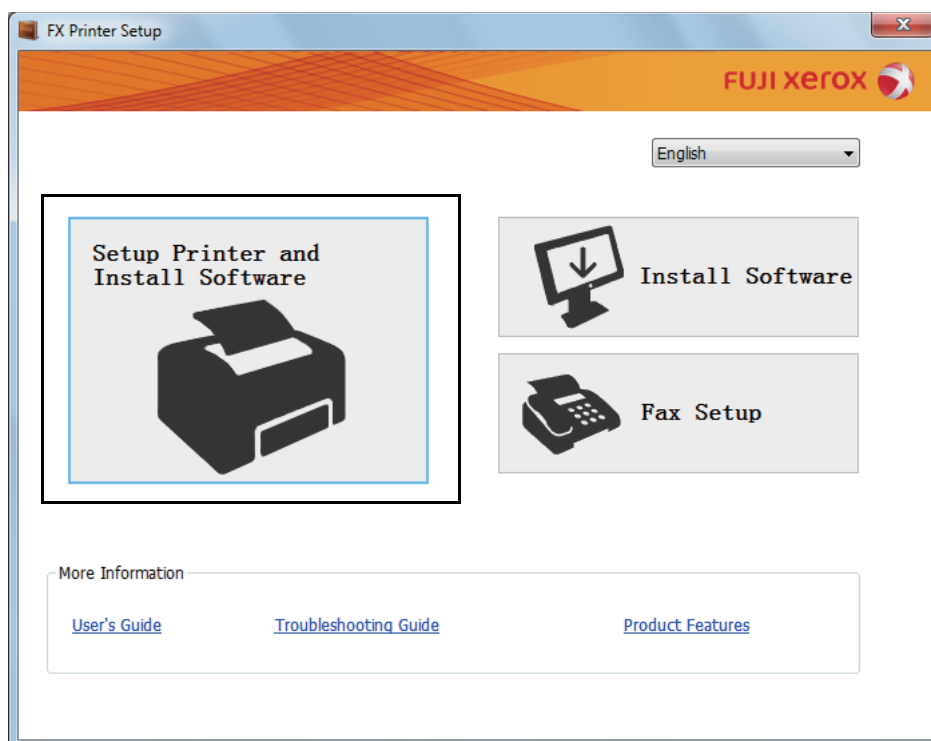
Launching the Printer Setup Screen

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer to start the **FX Printer Setup** screen.

NOTE:

- For Windows 8 and Windows Server® 2012, click on the message displayed on the upper right corner of the screen, and then select **Run setup.exe**.
- If the CD does not automatically launch, perform the following steps.
 - a For Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** (start for Windows XP) → **Run**.
For Windows Vista® and Windows 7, click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**.
For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012, right-click on the **Start** screen and click **All apps** → **Run**.
 - b Enter "D:\setup.exe" (in case your optical disk drive is D), and then click **OK**.

- 2 Click the **Setup Printer and Install Software** button.



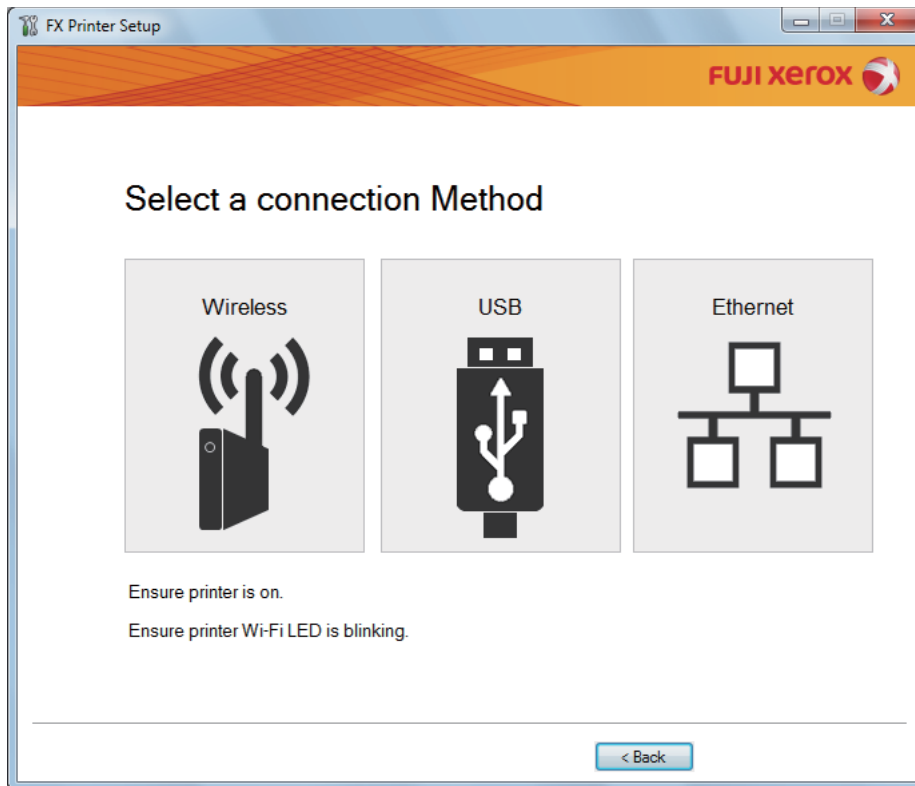
- 3 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, choose **I accept the terms of the license agreement**, and then click **Next**.

- 4 Select a connection method to the printer.


For the wireless connection, go to ["Configuring Wireless Connection Settings \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 92](#).

For the USB connection, go to ["Configuring USB Connection Settings" on page 93](#).

For the Ethernet connection, go to ["Configuring Ethernet Connection Settings \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 93](#).



Configuring Wireless Connection Settings (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

- 1 Confirm that the printer is turned on and the  (Wi-Fi) LED is blinking.
- 2 Click the **Wireless** button on the **Select a connection Method** screen.
- 3 Software automatically detects your network.
If the **Press "WPS" button on Printer and WPS button on Router** screen is displayed, follow the steps displayed on the screen.
In case the WPS button is not available on your router or you want to set up manually, click **Manual settings** and follow the instructions displayed on the screen.
- 4 Confirm **SSID** and **Printer Name** on the screen, and then click **Next**.
Software automatically detects your printer and installs required driver and software.
- 5 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to print a test page.

Configuring USB Connection Settings

- 1 Confirm that the USB cable is connected to the computer and the printer, and the printer is turned on.
NOTE:
 - For Windows XP or Windows Vista, if **Found New Hardware Wizard** appears, click **Cancel** at this time.
- 2 Click the **USB** button on the **Select a connection Method** screen.
The Plug and Play installation starts and the required driver and software are automatically installed.
- 3 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to print a test page.

Configuring Ethernet Connection Settings (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

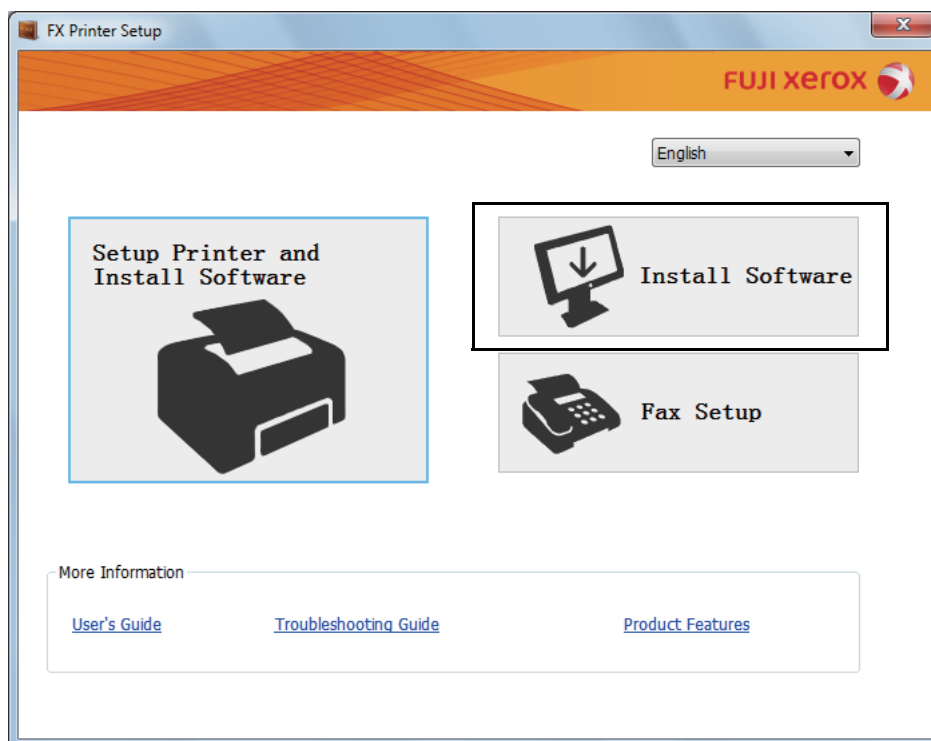
- 1 Click the **Ethernet** button on the **Select a connection Method** screen.
- 2 Connect the Ethernet cable to the printer and turn on the printer, and then click **Next**.
- 3 Select a printer you want to install from the **Printer** list, and then click **Next**.
If the target printer is not displayed on the **Printer** list, click the Refresh button to refresh the list or click **Enter IP Address** to add a printer manually.
In **Enter IP Address**, enter assigned IP address to the printer manually, and then click **OK**.
NOTE:
 - If the target printer is not displayed on the list, ensure Ethernet cable is correctly inserted to the printer and the router, and also confirm the printer IP address is properly appointed.
- 4 Confirm **IP Mode** and **Type**, and then click **Next**.
If you want to change the printer's IP address settings, click **Advanced** and configure the items on the **Configure Printer** screen. Especially if you want to set up printer with fixed IP, select **Use Manual Address** from **Type**.
- 5 Check and configure the printer information such as a printer name, default printer/scanner settings, printer sharing setting, specify whether to install the fax driver, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select the check box of the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**.
- 7 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to print a test page.

■ Using Installer to Install Software

If the printer connection via USB/Ethernet/Wireless is already configured and you want to perform the driver and software installation only, follow the procedure below.

If you have executed the steps in "[Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software](#)" on [page 91](#), the following procedure is not necessary.

- 1 Click the **Install Software** button.



- 2 If you agree to the terms of the **License Agreement**, choose **I accept the terms of the license agreement**, and then click **Next**.
- 3 Choose an installation type, and then click **Next**.
For the printer connected to your computer Using the USB cable, select **Personal Installation**.
For the printer connected to a wired or wireless network, select **Network Installation**.
- 4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen to complete the installation.

■ Installing the XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

This section describes how to install the XML Paper Specification (XPS) print driver using the Windows **Add Printer** wizard.

NOTE:

- The XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012.

Getting the Driver File

- 1 Insert the *Software Pack CD-ROM* into your computer.
- 2 Extract the zip file in the following path to your desired location.
D:\Drivers\XPS\Win_7Vista or **Win_8** (in case your optical disk drive is D)

Installing the Print Driver

• USB Connection Setup

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box displayed under the **Printer name**.
- 11 Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
NOTE:
 - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 12 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 13 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE:

- You must log in as an administrator.
- 1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
 - 2** Click **Add a printer**.
 - 3** Click **Add a local printer**.
 - 4** Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
 - 5** Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 6** Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
 - 7** Click **Open**.
 - 8** Click **OK**.
 - 9** Select your printer name and click **Next**.
 - 10** To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 11** Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
 - 12** If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
 - 13** Click **Next**.
 - 14** Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
 - 15** Click **Finish**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
NOTE:
 - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 3 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.
- 13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 14 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
 - 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
 - 3 Click **Add a printer**.
 - 4 Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - 5 Select **Add a local printer or network printer with manual settings**, and then click **Next**.
 - 6 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.
 - 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
 - 9 Click **Open**.
 - 10 Click **OK**.
 - 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
 - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.
If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
 - 14 Click **Next**.
 - 15 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 16 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
 - 17 Click **Finish**.

• Network Connection Setup

Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2** Click **Add a printer**.
- 3** Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4** Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step **7**.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step **5**.
- 5** Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
- 6** Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** box, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
NOTE:
 - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7** Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 8** Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
- 9** Click **Open**.
- 10** Click **OK**.
- 11** Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 12** To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 13** Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 14** Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 15** Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE:

- You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
 - 2 Click **Add a printer**.
 - 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
 - 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step 7.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
 - 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
 - 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address box**, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.
- NOTE:**
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
 - 9 Click **Open**.
 - 10 Click **OK**.
 - 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
 - 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 13 Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
 - 14 If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
 - 15 Click **Next**.
 - 16 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
 - 17 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

NOTE:

- If you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, the **Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on the screen.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE:

- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
- 7 Click **Open**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**. Installation starts.
- 11 If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 12 Click **Next**.
- 13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 14 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 15 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7 and Windows 7 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer**.
- 3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step 7.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
- 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address box**, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
NOTE:
 - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
- 9 Click **Open**.
- 10 Click **OK**.
- 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 13 If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 14 Click **Next**.
- 15 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 16 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 17 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Select a printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
If you have selected your printer, go to step 7.
If you have clicked **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.
- 5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** box, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in ["Getting the Driver File" on page 95](#).
- 9 Click **Open**.
- 10 Click **OK**.
- 11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
NOTE:
 - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 13 If you do not want your printer shared, select **Do not share this printer**. Otherwise, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 14 Click **Next**.
- 15 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 16 Upon completion of the driver installation, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 17 Click **Finish**.

■ Setting Up for Web Services on Devices (WSD) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the Microsoft protocol for Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows 8, and Windows Server 2012.

NOTE:

- WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

This section includes:

- ["Adding Roles of Print Services" on page 105](#)
- ["WSD Printer Setup" on page 106](#)

Adding Roles of Print Services

When you use Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows Server 2012, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows Server 2012 client.

• For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.
- 3 Select the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

• For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 From the **Action** menu, select **Add Roles**.
- 3 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

• For Windows Server 2012:

- 1 On the **Start** screen, click **Server Manager**.
- 2 Click **Add roles and features** to start **Add Roles and Features Wizard**.
- 3 Specify the settings and click **Next** until the **Select server roles** screen is displayed.
- 4 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box.
- 5 On the pop-up window, click **Add Features**.
- 6 Click **Next**.
- 7 Click **Next** on the **Select features** screen.
- 8 Check the explanation for **Print and Document Services** and click **Next**.
- 9 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 10 Click **Install**.

WSD Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using Windows **Add Printer** wizard. When installing using the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that shipped with your printer, see ["Using Installer to Set Up Connection and Install Software" on page 91](#).

• Installing a Print Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

- 1 For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Vista, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
For Windows Server 2008, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printer**.
For Windows 8, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Server 2012, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.
For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012, go to step 4.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

- 4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

NOTE:

- In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws/**.
- If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below. To create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.

- 1 Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

- 2 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.

- 3 Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.

- 4 Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.

- Before installing the driver using the **Add Printer** wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, add the print driver to your computer.

- 5 If prompted, install the print driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.

- 6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.

- 7 Print a test page to verify printer installation.

- a Open the **Devices and Printers** or **Printers** folder by performing step 1.
- b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Printer properties** (**Properties** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).
- c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

■ Setting Up for Shared Printing (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Software Pack CD-ROM* that shipped with your printer, or using Windows Point and Print or peer-to-peer method.

This section describes Point and Print and peer-to-peer methods. Configure the printer sharing settings on the server computer, and then install its driver on all the client computers that use the shared printer using Point and Print or peer-to-peer method. Using either of the methods, however, you will not be able to use features such as the SimpleMonitor and other printer utilities, which will be installed from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

NOTE:

- You need to purchase an Ethernet cable separately for shared printing.

Configuring the Sharing Settings of Your Printer

• For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Right-click this printer icon and select **Properties**.
- 3 From the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
If the files are not present in your computer, and then you will be prompted to insert the server operating system CD.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Click the **Change sharing options** button.
The "**Windows needs your permission to continue**" appears.
- 4 Click **Continue**.
- 5 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 6 Select **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 7 Click **OK**.
- 8 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 4 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To check that the printer is shared:

- Make sure that the printer object in the **Printers, Printers and Faxes** or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The share icon is shown under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and look for the shared name you assigned to the printer.

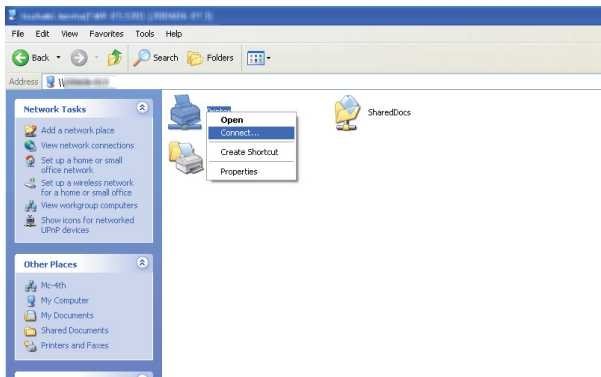
Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the Point and Print method or the peer-to-peer method.

Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the print driver.

• For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The time taken to copy varies based on the network traffic.

- 4 Close **My Network Places**.
- 5 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.
 - b Select the printer you have installed.
 - c Click **File** → **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

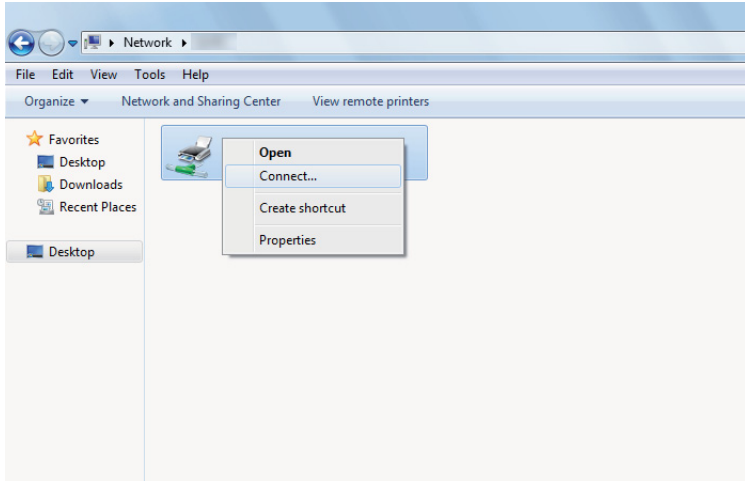
- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate and double-click the host name of the server computer.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.
Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object is added to the **Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound**.
 - b Select **Printers**.
 - c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
 - b Select **Hardware and Sound**.
 - c Select **Printers**.
 - d Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - e On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

- **For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Computer** → **Network** (**Start** → **Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
 - b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
 - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Network and Internet** → **View network computers and devices**.
- 3 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 4 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 5 Click **Install driver**.
- 6 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.
- 7 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
 - b Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound (Hardware for Windows Server 2012)** → **Devices and Printers**.
 - c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

Peer-to-Peer is a technology that allows you to connect to a printer connected to a host computer. You are required to download and install the print driver during the connection set up.

• For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** (**Add Printer** for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.
- 3 Click **Next**.
- 4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select the printer, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **Back** and enter in the path of the printer in the text box.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer Wizard' dialog box with the title bar 'Add Printer Wizard'. The main heading is 'Specify a Printer' with a subtext: 'If you don't know the name or address of the printer, you can search for a printer that meets your needs.' There is a printer icon in the top right corner. The question is 'What printer do you want to connect to?'. There are three radio button options: 'Browse for a printer', 'Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):', and 'Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:'. The second option is selected. Below it is a text box labeled 'Name:' containing the text '\\server\printer'. Below that is an example: 'Example: \\server\printer'. Below the third option is a text box labeled 'URL:' and an example: 'Example: http://server/printers/myprinter/.printer'. At the bottom are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

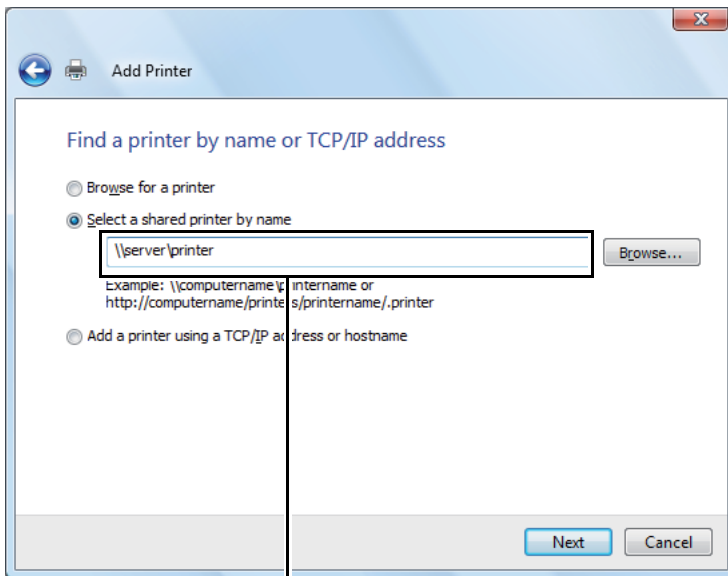
The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

- 7 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 8 Click **Finish**.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.
If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.
If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
 - b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

- 4 Perform the following as required, and then click **Next**.
 - Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
 - Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.
- 5 Click **Finish**.
If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

- a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
- b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network.
The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.

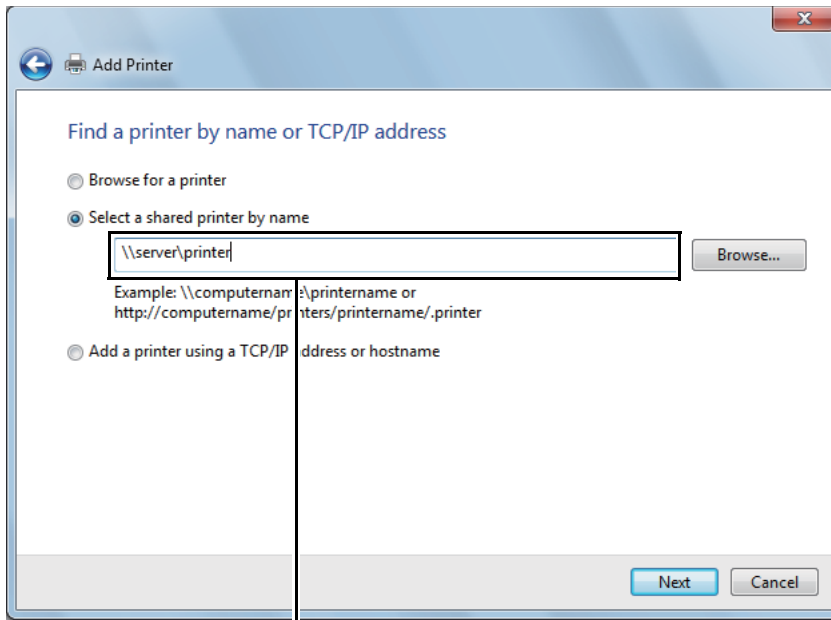
- 4 Perform the following as required, and then click **Next**.
 - Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
 - Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.

- 5 Click **Finish**.

If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.
If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
 - b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

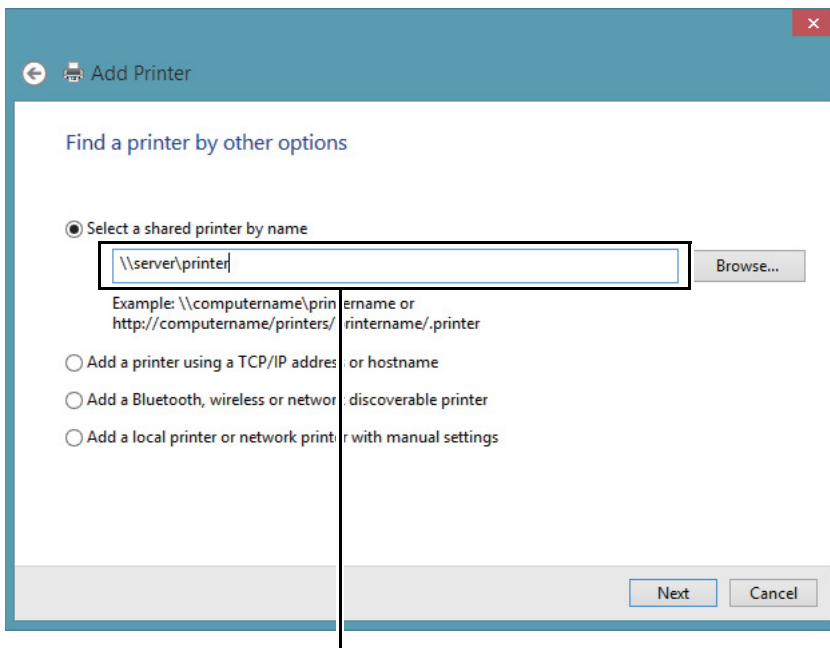
The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to the available drivers.

- 4 Perform the following as required, and then click **Finish**.
 - Click **Set as the default printer** to set this printer as the default printer.
 - Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

• For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2012

- 1 On the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 4 If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.
If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
 - a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.
 - b Enter the path to the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name that identifies the server computer on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no print drivers are available, you will need to provide a path to your print driver.

- 5 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Perform the following as required, and then click **Finish**.
 - Click **Set as the default printer** to set this printer as the default printer.
 - Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.

If a test page is printed successfully, the installation is complete.

Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X

This section includes:

- ["Installing Software" on page 120](#)
- ["Adding a Printer" on page 121](#)

■ Installing Software

1 Run the *Software Pack CD-ROM* on the Mac OS X.

2 Double-click the CD-ROM icon displayed on the desktop.

3 Double-click the installer icon.

NOTE:

- For the Mac OS X 10.4.11, click **Continue** on the confirmation message.

4 Click **Continue** on the **Introduction** screen.

5 Select a language for the **Software License Agreement**.

6 After reading the **Software License Agreement**, click **Continue**.

7 If you agree to the terms of the **Software License Agreement**, click **Agree** to continue the installation process.

NOTE:

- When the screen to select the installation destination appears, select an installation location and click **Continue**.

8 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.

9 Enter the administrator's name and password, and then click **OK** (**Install Software** for Mac OS X 10.7-10.8).

10 Click **Continue Installation**.

11 Click **Restart** to complete the installation.

■ Adding a Printer

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.7/10.8

• When Using a USB connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Scan**.
- 4 Confirm your USB printer is added to **Print & Scan**.
If your USB printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.
- 5 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.
- 6 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** (**Name** for Mac OS X 10.8) list.
Name, **Location**, and **Print Using** (**Use** for Mac OS X 10.8) are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Scan**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and select the printer from **Nearby Printers**. The printer will be added to **Print & Scan**.
If there are no printers in **Nearby Printers**, select **Add Other Printer or Scanner** (**Add Printer or Scanner** for Mac OS X 10.8), and then click **Default**. Proceed to step 5.
- 5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** (**Name** for Mac OS X 10.8) list.
Name and **Print Using** (**Use** for Mac OS X 10.8) are automatically entered.
- 6 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
 - 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
 - 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Scan**.
 - 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **IP**.
 - 5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
 - 6 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.
 - 7 Select the model of your printer for **Print Using** (**Use** for Mac OS X 10.8).
- NOTE:**
- When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 8 Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5.8/10.6

• When Using a USB connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 Confirm your USB printer is added to **Print & Fax** in **System Preferences**.
If your USB printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.
- 5 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.
- 6 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
Name, **Location**, and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **Default**.
- 5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 6 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
- 4 Click the plus (+) sign, and then click **IP**.
- 5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 6 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.
- 7 Select the model of your printer for **Print Using**.
NOTE:
 - When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 8 Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11

• When Using a USB Connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the printer and your computer with the USB cable.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.
NOTE:
 - You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Confirm your USB printer is added to **Printer List**.
If your USB printer is not displayed, execute the following procedures.
- 5 Click **Add**.
- 6 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 7 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
Name, **Location** and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 8 Click **Add**.

• When Using Bonjour (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.
NOTE:
 - You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.

• When Using IP Printing (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Make sure that your computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, make sure that the Ethernet cable is connected between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, make sure that wireless connection is configured properly on your computer and printer.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.
NOTE:
 - You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **IP Printer** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 7 Enter the IP address of the printer in the **Address** area.
- 8 Select **FX** for **Print Using**, and then select the model of your printer.
NOTE:
 - When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 9 Click **Add**.

Printing Basics

This chapter includes:

- ["About Print Media" on page 128](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 131](#)
- ["Loading Print Media" on page 133](#)
- ["Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 152](#)
- ["Printing" on page 153](#)

About Print Media

This section includes:

- ["Print Media Usage Guidelines" on page 128](#)
- ["Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\) Guidelines \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 129](#)
- ["Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer" on page 130](#)
- ["Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 130](#)

Using paper that is not appropriate for the printer can cause paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. To achieve the best performance from your printer, we recommend you to use only the paper described in this section.

When using paper other than that recommended, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Print Media Usage Guidelines

The printer tray accommodates various sizes and types of paper and other specialty media. Follow these guidelines when loading paper and media:

- Envelopes can be printed from the multipurpose feeder (MPF) and priority sheet inserter (PSI).
- Fan paper or other specialty media before loading in the tray.
- Do not print on label stock once a label has been removed from a sheet.
- Use only paper envelopes. Do not use envelopes with windows, metal clasps, or adhesives with release strips.
- Print all envelopes single-sided only.
- Some wrinkling and embossing may occur when printing envelopes.
- Do not overload the tray. Do not load print media above the fill line on the inside of the paper width guides.
- Adjust the paper width guides to fit the paper size.
- If excessive jams occur, use paper or other media from a new package.



WARNING:

- **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 134](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 139](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 144](#)
- ["Printing on Custom Size Paper" on page 162](#)

■ Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) Guidelines (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

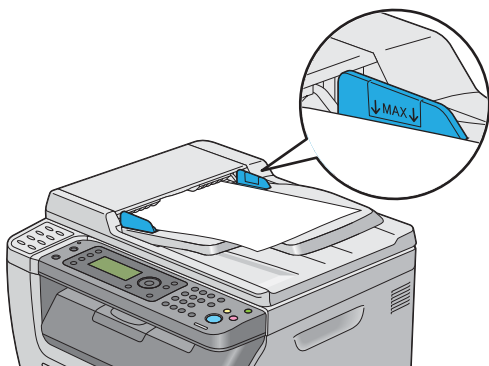
The ADF accommodates the following original sizes:

- Width: 148–215.9 mm (5.83–8.50 inches)
- Length: 210–355.6 mm (8.27–14.00 inches)

The weight range includes 60–105 gsm.







Follow these guidelines when loading original documents into the ADF:

- Load documents face up so that the top of the document enters the printer first.
- Place only loose sheets of paper in the ADF.
- Adjust the document guides so that they fit against the documents.
- Insert paper in the document feeder tray only when the ink on the paper is completely dry.
- Do not load documents above the MAX fill line. You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents.



NOTE:

- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

■ Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer

Your printer is designed to use a variety of media types for print jobs. However, some media can cause poor output quality, increased paper jams, or damage to your printer.

Unacceptable media includes:

- Rough or porous media
- Plastic media
- Paper that has been folded or wrinkled
- Paper with staples
- Envelopes with windows or metal clasps
- Padded envelopes
- Non-laser glossy or coated paper
- Perforated media



WARNING:

- **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

■ Print Media Storage Guidelines

Providing good storage conditions for your paper and other media contributes to optimum print quality.

- Store print media in dark, cool, relatively dry locations. Most paper items are susceptible to damage from ultraviolet (UV) and visible light. UV radiation, which is emitted by the sun and fluorescent bulbs, is particularly damaging to paper items. The intensity and length of exposure to visible light on paper items should be reduced as much as possible.
- Maintain constant temperatures and relative humidity.
- Avoid attics, kitchens, garages, and basements for storing print media.
- Store print media flat. Print media should be stored on pallets, cartons, shelves, or in cabinets.
- Avoid having food or drinks in the area where print media is stored or handled.
- Do not open sealed packages of paper until you are ready to load them into the printer. Leave paper in the original packaging. For most commercial cut-size grades, the ream wrapper contains an inner lining that protects the paper from moisture loss or gain.
- Leave the media inside the bag until you are ready to use it; reinsert unused media in the bag and reseal it for protection. Some specialty media is packaged inside resealable plastic bags.

Supported Print Media

Using unsuitable print media may lead to paper jams, poor print quality, breakdown and damage to your printer. To use the features of this printer effectively, use the suggested print media that is recommended here.

IMPORTANT:

- The toner may come off the print media if it gets wet by water, rain, steam and so on. For details, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Usable Print Media

The types of print media that can be used on this printer are as follows:

Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm)
	B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm)
	A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm)
	Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches)
	Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches)
	Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches)
	Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches)
	C5 SEF (162 × 229 mm)
	Monarch SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches)
	Monarch LEF (7.5 × 3.875 inches)*
	Com 10 SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches)
	DL SEF (110 × 220 mm)
	DL LEF (220 × 110 mm)*
	Custom size:
Paper Type	Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3–8.5 inches)
	Length: 127–355.6 mm (5–14 inches)
	Plain (60 -90 gsm)
	Bond (91 -105 gsm)
	Lightweight Cardstock (106 -163 gsm)
	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock (106 -163 gsm)
	Envelope
	Labels
	Recycled (60 -105 gsm)
Loading Capacity	150 sheets of standard paper
*: Monarch and DL can be supported by LEF with their flap open.	

Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm)
	B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm)
	A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm)
	Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches)
	Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches)
	Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches)
	Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches)
	C5 SEF (162 × 229 mm)
	Monarch SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches)
	Com 10 SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches)
	DL SEF (110 × 220 mm)
	Custom size: Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3–8.5 inches) Length: 190.5–355.6 mm (7.5 –14 inches)
Paper Type	Plain (60 -90 gsm)
	Bond (91 -105 gsm)
	Lightweight Cardstock (106 -163 gsm)
	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock (106 -163 gsm)
	Envelope
	Labels
	Recycled (60 -105 gsm)
Loading Capacity	10 sheets of standard paper

NOTE:

- SEF and LEF indicate the paper feed direction; SEF stands for short-edge feed. LEF stands for long-edge feed.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 134](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 139](#)
- ["Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 144](#)

Printing on print media that differs from the paper size or paper type selected on the print driver may lead to paper jams. To make sure that printing is correctly done, select the correct paper size and paper type.

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually on the print media package.

NOTE:

- After loading paper in the feeder, specify the same paper type on the operator panel.

This section includes:

- ["Capacity" on page 133](#)
- ["Print Media Dimensions" on page 133](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 134](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#)
- ["Manual Duplex Printing" on page 147](#)
- ["Using the Output Tray Extension" on page 151](#)

■ Capacity

The MPF can hold:

- 150 sheets of standard paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of thick paper
- One sheet of coated paper
- Five envelopes
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of labels

The PSI can hold:

- 10 sheets of standard paper or one sheet of other paper

■ Print Media Dimensions

The MPF accepts print media within the following dimensions:

- Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3.00–8.50 inches)
- Length: 127–355.6 mm (5.00–14.00 inches)

The PSI accepts print media within the following dimensions:

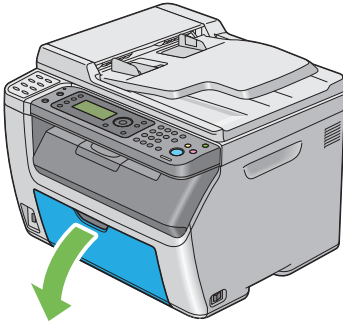
- Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3.00–8.50 inches)
- Length: 190.5–355.6 mm (7.50–14.00 inches)

■ Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

NOTE:

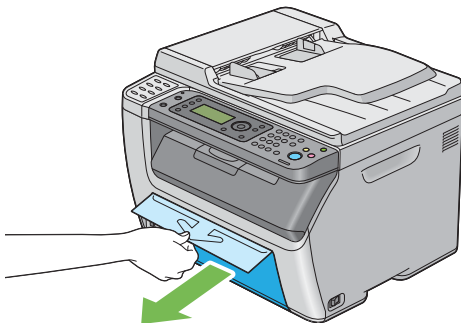
- To avoid paper jams, do not remove the priority sheet inserter (PSI) while printing is in progress.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

- 1 Open the front cover.

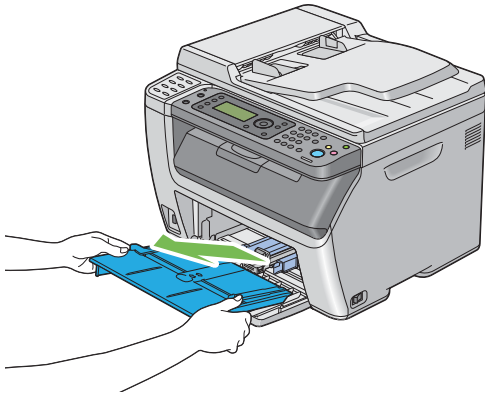


NOTE:

- When you use the MPF for the first time, open the front cover by pulling out the instruction sheet.

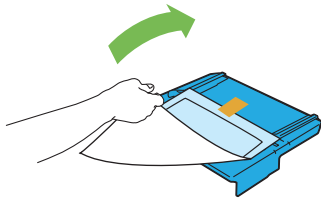


2 Pull the PSI out.

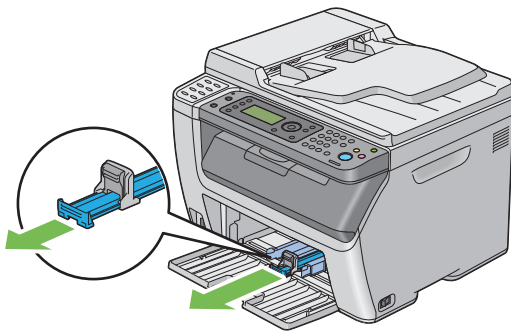


NOTE:

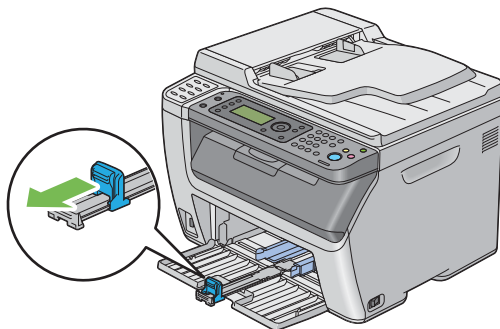
- When you use the MPF for the first time, remove the instruction sheet attached to the PSI with adhesive tape.
- Read the instruction sheet before you use the PSI.



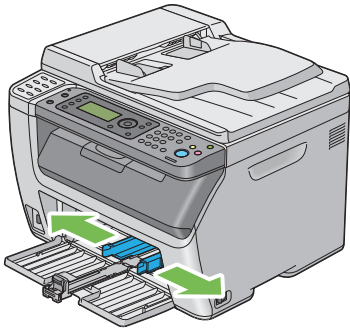
3 Pull the slide bar forward until it stops.



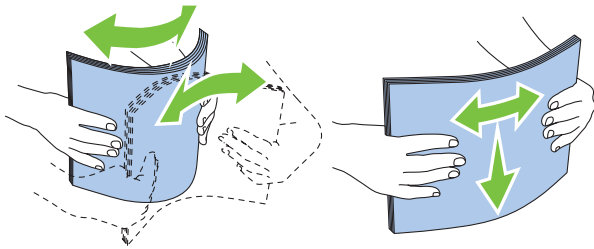
4 Pinch the length guide and pull it forward until it stops.



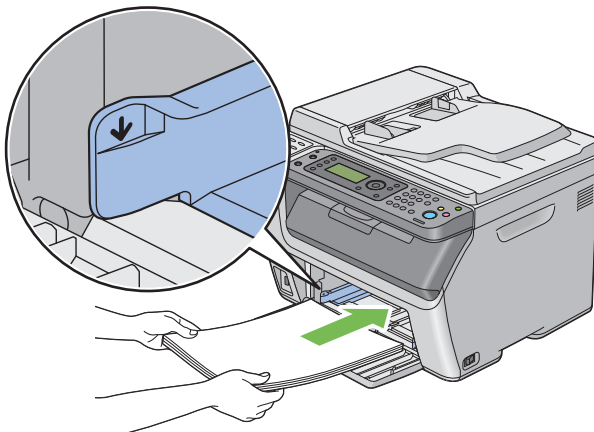
- 5** Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.



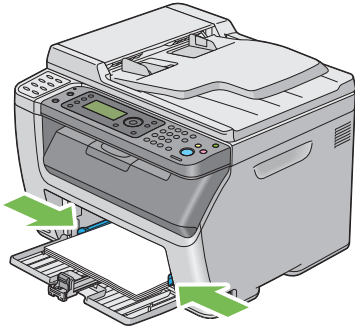
- 6** Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



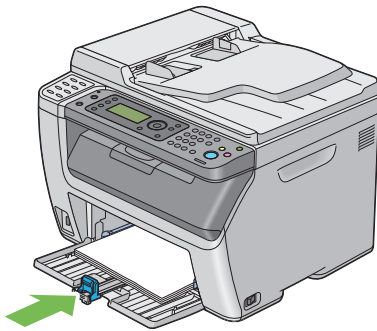
- 7** Load print media on the MPF with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



- 8 Adjust the paper width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.

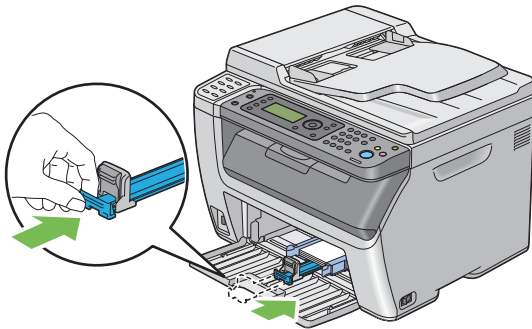


- 9 Pinch the length guide and slide it towards the printer until it touches the print media.

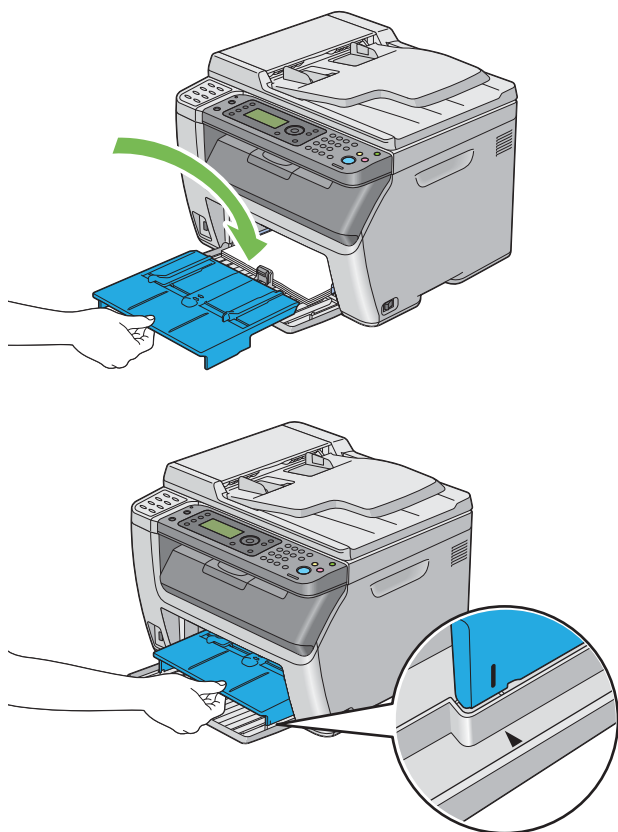


NOTE:

- Depending on the size of print media, first slide the slide bar backward until it stops, and then pinch the length guide and slide it backward until it touches print media.



- 10** Insert the PSI into the printer and then align the PSI to the marking on the MPF.



- 11** Select the paper type from the print driver if the loaded print media is not plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the MPF, you must specify the paper size setting by using the print driver.

NOTE:

- For more information about setting the paper size and type on the print driver, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

NOTE:

- For standard-size paper, adjust the length guide and paper width guides first and then set paper.

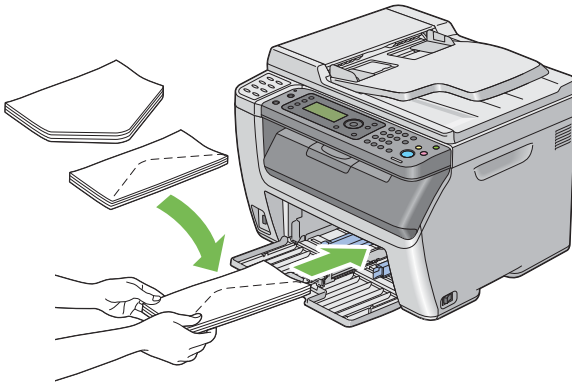
Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

NOTE:

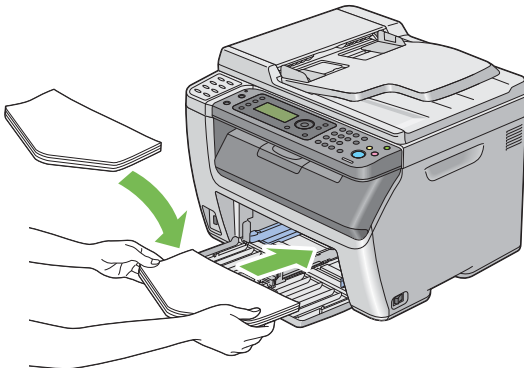
- When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the print driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

• When Loading Com 10, DL, or Monarch

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.



To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.

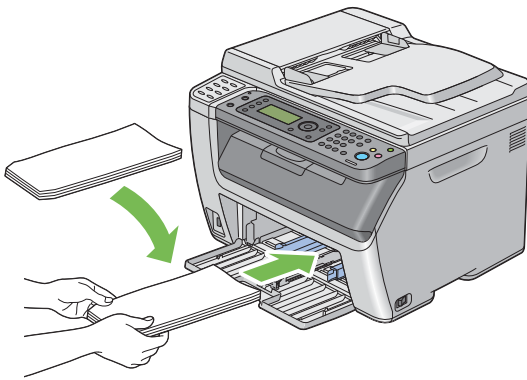


NOTE:

- When you load the envelopes in the long-edge feed (LEF) orientation, be sure to specify the landscape orientation on the print driver.

• When Loading C5

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, flap opened and facing you.

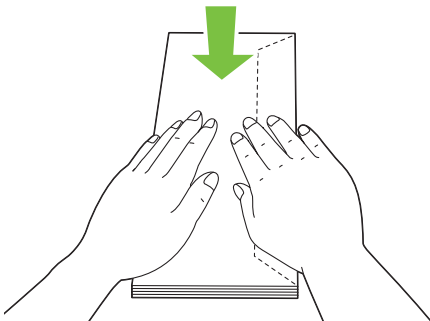


IMPORTANT:

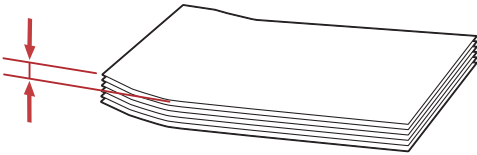
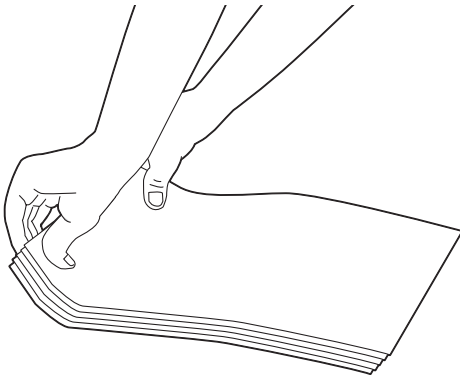
- Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

NOTE:

- If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the MPF.



- If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.



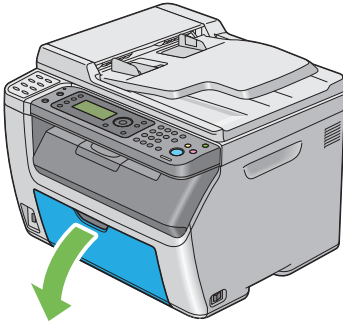
- To confirm the correct orientation of envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.

■ Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

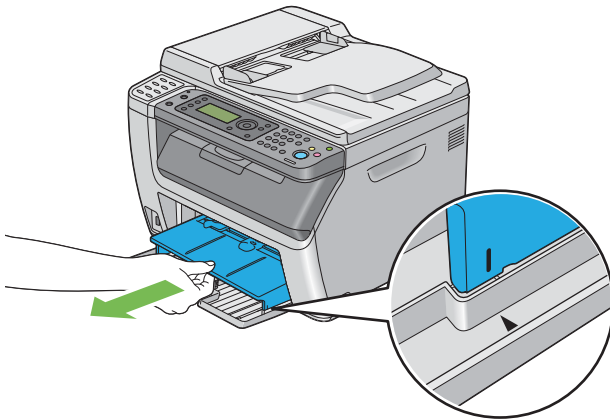
NOTE:

- To avoid paper jams, do not remove the PSI while printing is in progress.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

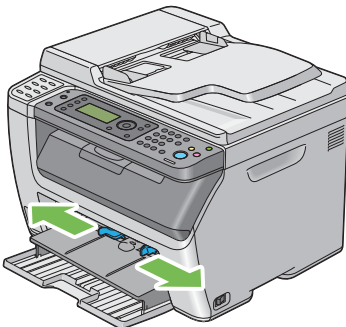
- 1 Open the front cover.



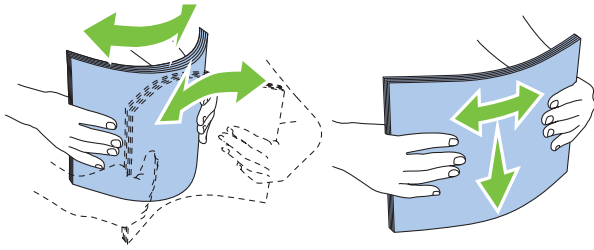
- 2 Slide the PSI forward, and then align the PSI to the marking on the MPF.



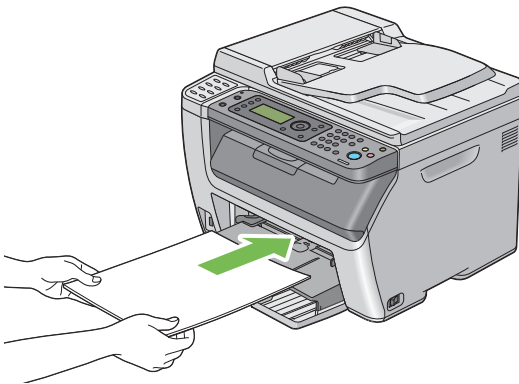
- 3 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum width.



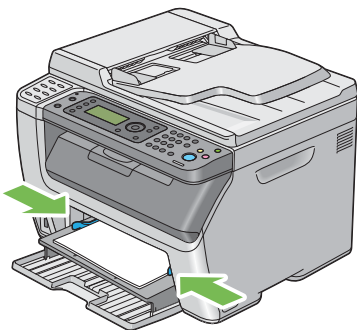
- 4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



- 5 Load print media on the PSI with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



- 6 Adjust the paper width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.



- 7 Select the paper type from the print driver if the loaded print media is not plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the PSI, you must specify the paper size setting by using the print driver.

NOTE:

- For more information about setting the paper size and type on the print driver, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

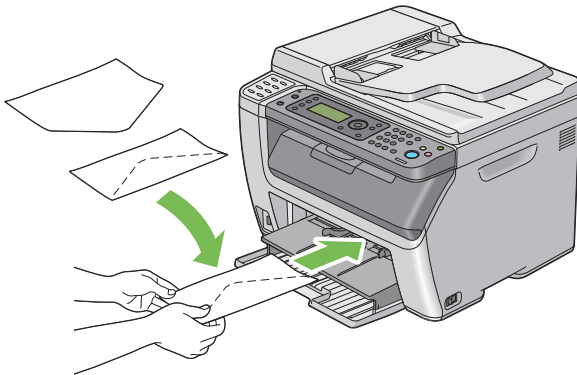
Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

NOTE:

- Be sure to fully insert the envelope until it stops. Otherwise, print media that is loaded on the MPF will be fed.
- When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the print driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

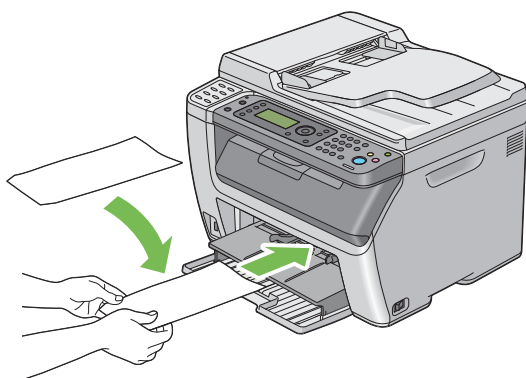
• When Loading Com 10, DL, or Monarch

Load the envelope with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.



• When Loading C5

Load the envelope with the side to be printed on facing up, flap opened and facing you.

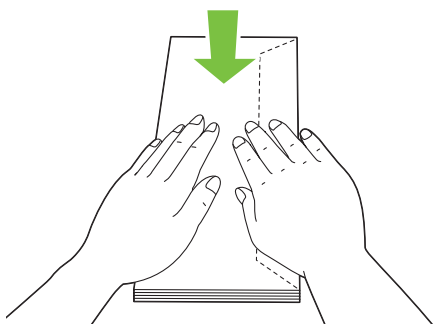


IMPORTANT:

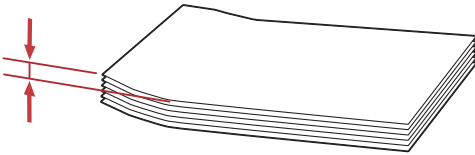
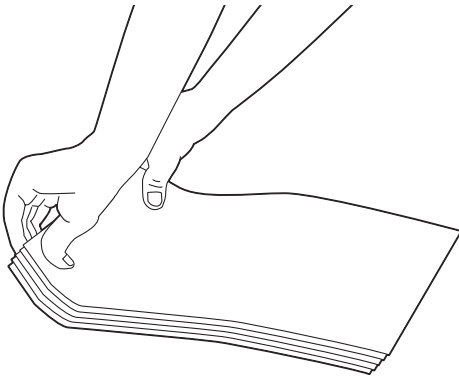
- Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

NOTE:

- If you do not load envelopes in the PSI right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the PSI.



- If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.



- To confirm the correct orientation of envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the print driver.

■ Manual Duplex Printing

This section includes:

- ["Operations on Your Computer" on page 147](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 149](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 150](#)

NOTE:

- When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the feeder.

Operations on Your Computer

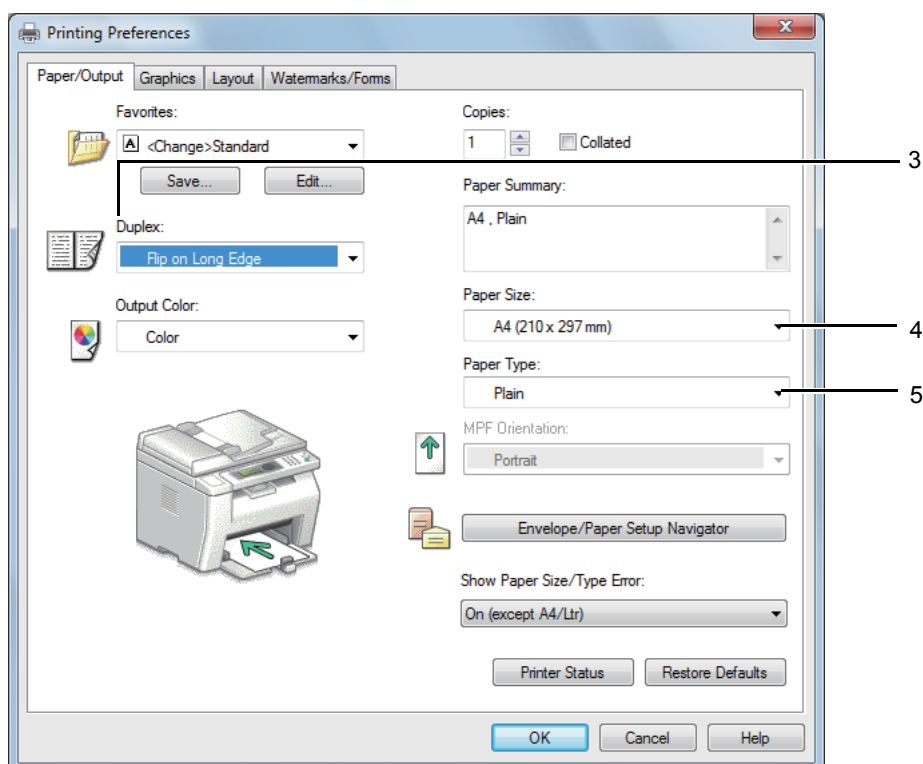
• Using the Windows Print Driver

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- The way to display the printer **Properties/Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.

- 1 From the application menu, select **Print**.
- 2 Select the printer from the **Select Printer** list box, and then click **Preferences**.
The **Paper/Output** tab of the **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.
- 3 From **Duplex**, select either **Flip on Long Edge** or **Flip on Short Edge** to define the way 2-sided print pages are bound.



- 4 From **Paper Size**, select the size of the document to be printed.

- 5 From **Paper Type**, select the paper type to be used.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

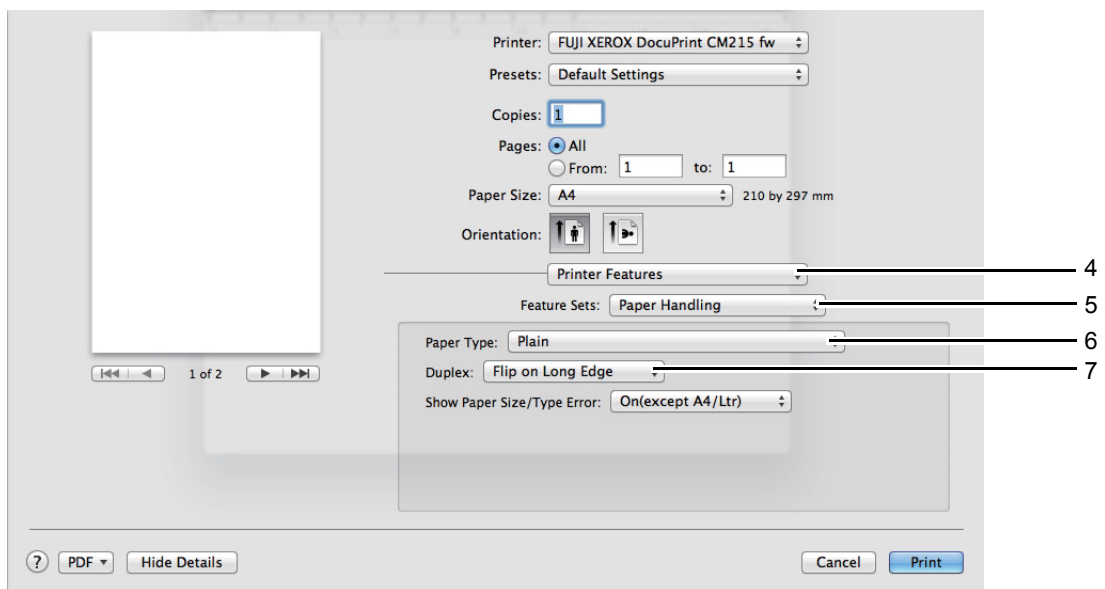
IMPORTANT:

- When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

• Using the Mac OS X Print Driver

The following procedure uses Mac OS X 10.8 TextEdit as an example.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 2 Select the printer from **Printer**.
- 3 From **Paper Size**, select the size of the document to be printed.
- 4 Select the **Printer Features** pane.
- 5 From **Feature Sets**, select **Paper Handling**.




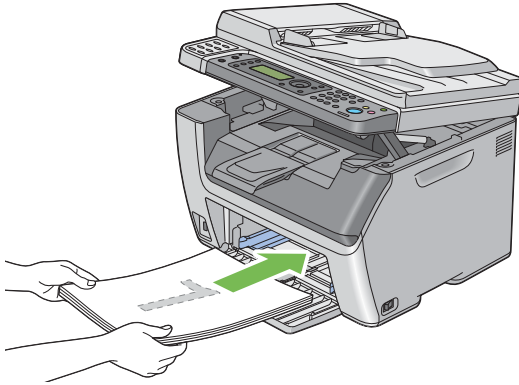
- 6 From **Paper Type**, select the paper type to be used.
- 7 From **Duplex**, select either **Flip on Long Edge** or **Flip on Short Edge** to define the way 2-sided print pages are bound.
- 8 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

- 1 First print the even pages (back sides).

For a six page document, back sides are printed in the order of page 6, page 4, then page 2.


The  (**Data**) LED blinks and the **Insert Output to Tray** message appears on the LCD panel when the even pages finish printing.



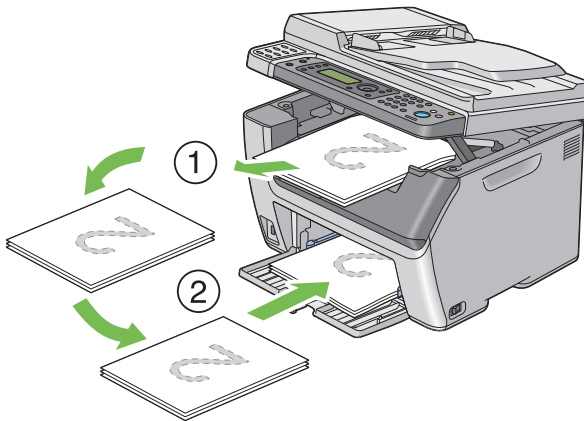
- 2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the center output tray.

NOTE:

- Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting.

- 3 Stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the MPF, and then press the  button.

Pages are printed in the order of page 1 (back of page 2), page 3 (back of page 4), and then page 5 (back of page 6).




NOTE:

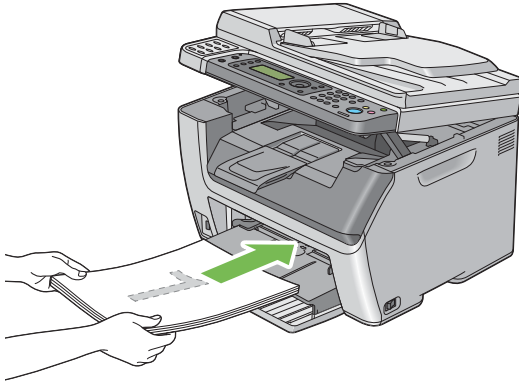
- Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of paper.

Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

- 1 First print the even pages (back sides).

For a six page document, back sides are printed in the order page 6, page 4, then page 2.


The  (**Data**) LED blinks and the **Insert Output to Tray** message appears on the LCD panel when the even pages finish printing.



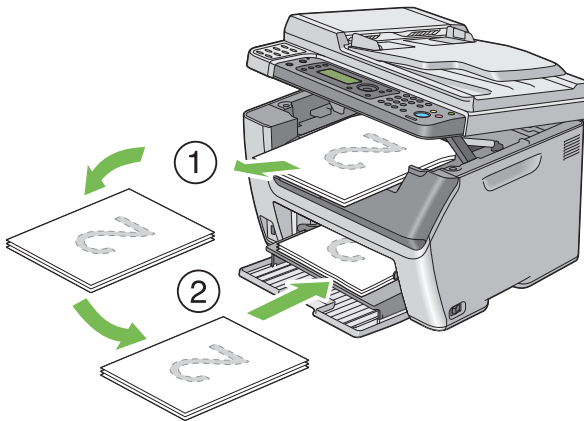
- 2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the center output tray.

NOTE:

- Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting.

- 3 Stack the prints and set them as they are (with the blank side face up) into the PSI, and then press the  button.

Pages are printed in order of page 1 (back of page 2), page 3 (back of page 4), and then page 5 (back of page 6).



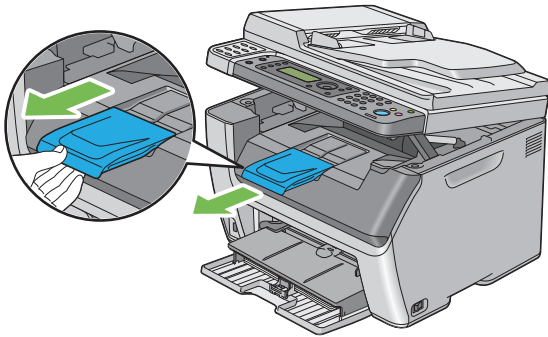
NOTE:

- Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of paper.

■ Using the Output Tray Extension

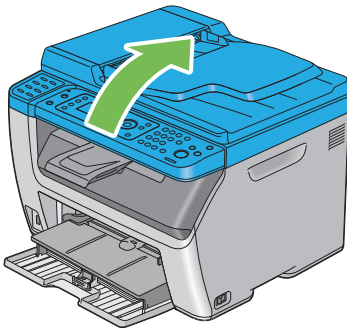
The output tray extension is designed to prevent print media from falling from the printer after the print job is complete.

Before printing a long length document, make sure that the output tray extension is fully extended.



NOTE:

- When you pull out envelopes or small size print media from the center output tray, lift up the scanner.







Setting Paper Sizes and Types

When loading print media, set the paper size and type on the operator panel before printing. This section describes how to set the paper size and type on the operator panel.

See also:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 274](#)





■ Setting Paper Sizes

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Tray Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `MPF`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Paper Size`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the correct paper size for the print media loaded, and then press the  button.

■ Setting Paper Types

IMPORTANT:

- Paper type settings must match those of the actual print media loaded in the tray. Otherwise, print-quality problems can occur.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Tray Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `MPF`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Paper Type`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the correct paper type for the print media loaded, and then press the  button.

Printing

This section covers how to print documents from your printer and how to cancel a job.

This section includes:

- ["Printing from the Computer" on page 153](#)
- ["Canceling a Print Job" on page 154](#)
- ["Selecting Printing Options" on page 156](#)
- ["Printing on Custom Size Paper" on page 161](#)
- ["Checking Status of Print Job" on page 163](#)
- ["Printing a Report Page" on page 164](#)
- ["Printer Settings" on page 165](#)

■ Printing from the Computer

Install the print driver to use all the features of the printer. When you choose **Print** from an application, a window representing the print driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the file to print. Print settings selected from the driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or the Printer Setting Utility.

Printing from the Computer (Windows)

Clicking **Properties/Preferences** from the initial **Print** dialog box enables you to change the print settings. If you are not familiar with a feature in the print driver window, open the Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Windows application:

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 From the application menu, select **Print**.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the print settings as needed (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 To adjust print settings not available from the first screen, such as **Paper Size**, **Paper Type**, or **MPF Orientation**, click **Preferences**.
The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.
- 5 Specify the print settings. For more information, click **Help**.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

Printing from the Computer (Mac OS X)

The following procedure uses Mac OS X 10.8 TextEdit as an example.

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in **Printer**. Modify the system settings as needed (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 To adjust system settings not available from the first screen, such as **Pages per Sheet**, **Output Color**, or **Paper Type**, select the desired pane from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Specify the print settings. For more information, click the ? button.
- 6 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

■ Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a print job.

Canceling a Print Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

- 1 Press the ⏹ (**Stop**) button.

NOTE:

- Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

Canceling a Print Job From the Computer (Windows)

• Canceling a Print Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

- 1 Double-click the printer icon.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 2 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 3 Press the **Delete** key.
- 4 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

• Canceling a Print Job From the Desktop

- 1 Minimize all programs to reveal the desktop.
For Windows XP, click **start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
For Windows Server® 2003, click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Vista® and Windows Server 2008, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
For Windows 8, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Server 2012, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.
A list of available printers appears.
- 2 Double-click the printer you selected when you sent the job.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 3 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 4 Press the **Delete** key.
- 5 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

Canceling a Print Job From the Computer (Mac OS X)

• Canceling a Print Job From the Dock

When you send a job to print, a printer icon appears in the Dock.

- 1 Click the printer dock icon.
The print queue appears.
- 2 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 3 For Mac OS X 10.4.11-10.7, click **Delete**.
For Mac OS X 10.8, click the **X** button.

• Canceling a Print Job From System Preferences

- 1 For Mac OS X 10.4.11-10.6, display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Fax**.
For Mac OS X 10.7-10.8, display **System Preferences**, and then click **Print & Scan**.
- 2 Select the printer from the printer list on the left.
- 3 For Mac OS X 10.4.11, click **Print Queue**.
For Mac OS X 10.5-10.8, click **Open Print Queue**.
- 4 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 5 For Mac OS X 10.4.11-10.7, click **Delete**.
For Mac OS X 10.8, click the **X** button.

■ Selecting Printing Options

This section includes:

- ["Selecting Printing Preferences \(Windows\)" on page 156](#)
- ["Selecting Options for an Individual Job \(Windows\)" on page 157](#)
- ["Selecting Options for an Individual Job \(Mac OS X\)" on page 159](#)

Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows)

Printing preferences control all of your print jobs, unless you override them specifically for a job. For example, if you want to use duplex printing for most jobs, set this option in printing preferences.

To select printing preferences:

- 1 For Windows XP, click **start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
For Windows Server 2003, click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008, click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
For Windows 8, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers**.
For Windows Server 2012, on the **Desktop** screen, place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings**. Click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers**.
A list of available printers appears.
- 2 Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Printing Preferences**.
The printer's **Printing Preferences** screen appears.
- 3 Make selections on the driver tabs, and then click **OK** to save your selections.

NOTE:

- For more information about Windows print driver options, click **Help** on the print driver tab to view the Help.

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Windows)

If you want to use special printing options for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer. For example, if you want to use Photo print-quality mode for a particular graphic, select this setting in the driver before printing that job.

- 1 With the desired document or graphic open in your application, access the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences** to open the print driver.
- 3 Make selections on the driver tabs.

NOTE:

- In Windows, you can save current printing options with a distinctive name and apply them to other print jobs. Make selections on the **Paper/Output**, **Graphics**, **Layout**, or **Watermarks/Forms** tab, and then click **Save** under **Favorites** on the **Paper/Output** tab. Click **Help** for more information.

- 4 Click **OK** to save your selections.
- 5 Print the job.

See the following table for specific printing options:

Printing Options for Windows

Driver Tab	Printing Options
Paper/Output tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Favorites• Duplex• Output Color• Copies• Collated• Paper Summary• Paper Size• Paper Type• MPF Orientation• Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator• Show Paper Size/Type Error• Printer Status• Restore Defaults
Graphics tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Output Color• Image Adjustment Mode• Image Types• Intent• Screen• Toner Saving Mode• Image Settings• Color Balance• Profile Settings• Restore Defaults

Driver Tab	Printing Options
Layout tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Image Orientation • Multiple Up • Image Order • Image Border • Poster/Mixed Document • Output Size • Reduce / Enlarge • Margin Shift/Margin • Restore Defaults
Watermarks/Forms tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Watermarks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – New Text – New Bitmap – Edit – Delete – First Page Only • Forms <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Off – Create / Register Forms – Image Overlay • Header / Footer Options • Restore Defaults

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Mac OS X)

To select print settings for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer.

- 1 With the document open in your application, click **File**, and then click **Print**.
- 2 Select your printer from **Printer**.
- 3 Select the desired printing options from the menus and drop-down list boxes that are displayed.

NOTE:

- In Mac OS X, click **Save As (Save Current Settings as Preset** for Mac OS X 10.8) on the **Presets** menu screen to save the current printer settings. You can create multiple presets and save each with its own distinctive name and printer settings. To print jobs using specific printer settings, click the applicable saved preset in the **Presets** menu.

- 4 Click **Print** to print the job.

Mac OS X Print Driver Printing Options:

The table shown below uses Mac OS X 10.8 TextEdit as an example.

Printing options for Mac OS X

Item	Printing Options
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Copies• Pages• Paper Size• Orientation
Layout	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Pages per Sheet• Layout Direction• Border• Reverse page orientation (for Mac OS X 10.5 or later)• Flip horizontally (for Mac OS X 10.6 or later)
Color Matching	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ColorSync• Vendor Matching
Paper Handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Collate pages• Pages to Print• Page Order• Scale to fit paper size• Destination Paper Size• Scale down only
Cover Page	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Cover Page• Cover Page Type• Billing Info

Item	Printing Options
Image Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Output Color • Image Quality • Brightness • Image Types • Screen • Color Balance
Printer Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Detailed Settings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Image Rotation (180deg) – Toner Saving Mode • Paper Handling <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Paper Type – Duplex – Show Paper Size/Type Error • Printer Specific Options <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Skip Blank Pages

■ Printing on Custom Size Paper

This section explains how to print on custom size paper using the print driver.

The way to load custom size paper is the same as the one to load standard size paper.

See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 134](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#)
- ["Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 152](#)

Defining Custom Paper Sizes

Before printing, set the custom size on the print driver.

NOTE:

- When setting the paper size on the print driver and the operator panel, be sure to specify the same size as the actual print media used. Setting the wrong size for printing can cause printer failure. This is especially true if you configure a bigger size when using a narrow width paper.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

On the Windows print driver, set the custom size in the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box. This section explains the procedure using Windows 7 as an example.

An administrator's password only allows users with administrator rights to change the settings. Users without the rights of administrator can only view the contents.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer, and then select **Printer properties**.
- 3 Select the **Configuration** tab.
- 4 Click **Custom Paper Size**.
- 5 Select the custom setup you want to define from **Details**.
- 6 Specify the length of the short edge and long edge under **Change Setting For**. You can specify the values either by entering them directly or using the up arrow and down arrow buttons. The length of the short edge cannot be longer than the long edge even if it is within the specified range. The length of the long edge cannot be shorter than the short edge even if it is within the specified range.
- 7 To assign a paper name, select the **Name the Paper Size** check box, and then enter the name in **Paper Name**. Up to 14 characters can be used for the paper name.
- 8 If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 7 to define another custom size.
- 9 Click **OK** twice.

Printing on Custom Size Paper

Use the following procedures to print using either the Windows or Mac OS X print drivers.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- The way to display the printer **Properties/Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of your respective application software.

- 1 From the application menu, select **Print**.
- 2 Select your printer and click **Preferences**.
- 3 Select the **Paper/Output** tab.
- 4 Select the size of the document to be printed from **Paper Size**.
- 5 Select the paper type to be used from **Paper Type**.
- 6 Click the **Layout** tab.
- 7 From **Output Size**, select the custom size you defined. If you have selected the custom size from **Paper Size** in step 4, select **Same as Paper Size**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

• Using the Mac OS X Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Mac OS X 10.8 TextEdit as an example.

- 1 From the **File** menu, select **Page Setup**.
- 2 Select your printer from **Format For**.
- 3 From **Paper Size**, select **Manage Custom Sizes**.
- 4 In the **Custom Paper Sizes** window, click **+**.
A newly created setting "Untitled" is displayed in the list.
- 5 Double-click "Untitled" and enter a name for the setting.
- 6 Enter the size of the document to be printed in the **Width** and **Height** boxes of **Paper Size**.
- 7 Specify **Non-Printable Area** if necessary.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Make sure that the newly created paper size is chosen in **Paper Size**, and then click **OK**.
- 10 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 11 Click **Print** to start printing.

■ Checking Status of Print Job

Checking Status via the SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

You can check the printer status with the SimpleMonitor. Double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Printer Selection** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection port, printer status, and model name. Check the column **Status** to know the current status of your printer.

Settings button: Displays the **Settings** window and allows you to modify the SimpleMonitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Printer Selection** window. The **Printer Status** window appears. You can check the printer status and print job status.

For more information about the SimpleMonitor, see Help. The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs**.
- 2 Select **Fuji Xerox**.
- 3 Select **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific**.
- 4 Select your printer.
- 5 Select **SimpleMonitor-Btype for Asia-Pacific**.
The **Printer Selection** window appears.
- 6 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.
The **Printer Status** window appears.
- 7 Click **Help**.

See also:

- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 59](#)

Checking Status via the CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

You can check the status of the print job sent to the printer at the **Jobs** tab of the CentreWare Internet Services.

See also:

- ["CentreWare Internet Services \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 57](#)

■ Printing a Report Page

You can print a various types of reports and lists. For details on each report and list, see ["Report / List" on page 274](#).

Taking the System Settings page as an example, this section describes how to print a report page.



Printing a System Settings Page

To verify detailed printer settings, print a System Settings page.

Using the Operator Panel

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Report / List**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **System Settings**, and then press the  button.
The System Settings page is printed.

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click **System Settings**.
The System Settings page is printed.

■ Printer Settings

This section includes:

- ["Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings" on page 165](#)
- ["Using the Printer Setting Utility to Change the Printer Settings \(Windows Only\)" on page 166](#)
- ["Adjusting the Language" on page 166](#)

Using the Operator Panel to Change the Printer Settings



You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first enter the menus from the operator panel, you see a list of menu items. The value displayed on the right of each menu item is the factory default menu setting. These settings are the original printer settings.

NOTE:


- Factory defaults may vary for different regions.

To select a new value as a default menu setting:



- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select the desired menu, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired menu or menu item, and then press the  button.
 - If the selection is a menu, the menu is opened and the list of menu items appears.
 - If the selection is a menu item, the default menu setting for the menu item is displayed with a highlight.



Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
- A numerical value that can be changed
- An On or Off setting

- 4 Select the desired value.
- 5 Press the  button to enable the setting value.

The value is displayed on the right of the menu item in the previous screen to identify it as the current user default menu setting.

- 6 To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. Press the  (**Back**) or  button to return to the previous menu.

To quit setting new values, press the **System** button, and then press the  (**Back**) or  button to return to the `Select Function` screen.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

Note that the print driver settings have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel.

Using the Printer Setting Utility to Change the Printer Settings (Windows Only)

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the Printer Setting Utility.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- Factory defaults may vary for different regions.
These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.

- 3 Select the desired menu item.

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
- A numerical value that can be changed
- An On or Off setting



- 4 Select the desired value, and then click the **Apply New Settings** or **Restart printer to apply new settings** button.

Note that the print driver settings have precedence over the settings made on the Printer Settings Utility.

Adjusting the Language

To display a different language on the operator panel:

• Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Panel Language**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired language, and then press the  button.

• Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility appears.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **System Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **System Settings** page is displayed.
- 4 Select the desired language from **Panel Language**, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Copying

This chapter includes:

- ["Loading Paper for Copying" on page 170](#)
- ["Preparing a Document" on page 171](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)
- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)
- ["Changing the Default Settings" on page 191](#)

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading print documents are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

See also:

- ["Usable Print Media" on page 131](#)
- ["Loading Print Media" on page 133](#)

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the automatic document feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning and sending a fax. (The ADF and fax feature are available only for the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.) You can load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents for one job using the ADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

IMPORTANT:

- Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 148.0 × 210.0 mm (5.83 × 8.27 inch) or larger than 215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.5 × 14 inch), different sizes or weights together, booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in ADF.
- Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper or torn paper cannot be used in ADF.
- Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in ADF.

NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

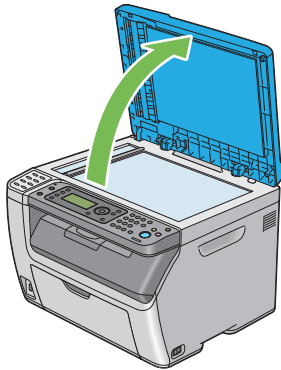
Making Copies From the Document Glass

NOTE:

- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, make sure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
- Dust on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy printout. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see ["Cleaning the Scanner" on page 383](#).

To make a copy from the document glass:

- 1 Open the document cover.

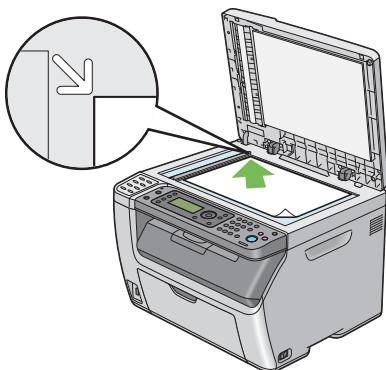


- 2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.



CAUTION:

- Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.



- 3 Close the document cover.


NOTE:


- Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.
- If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper, and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start copying with the document cover open.

- 4 Press the **Copy** button.
- 5 Customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.


See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

To clear the settings, use the  (**Clear All**) button.

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.







Making Copies From the ADF (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

IMPORTANT:

- Do not load more than 15 sheets on the ADF or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it holds more than 15 sheets or your source documents may be damaged.

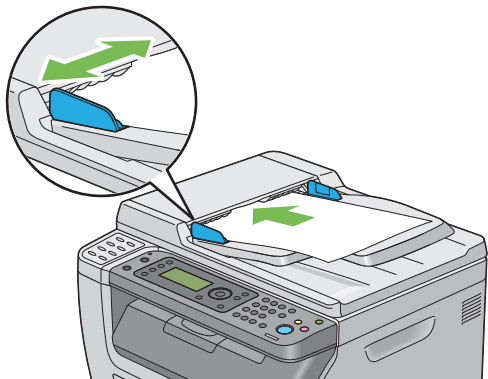
NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.
- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

To make copy from the ADF:

- 1 Load up to 15 sheets of 64 gsm documents facing up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.




NOTE:

- Be sure to adjust the document guides before copying a legal-size document.

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Customize the copy settings such as number of copies, copy size, and image quality.


See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

To clear the settings, use the  (**Clear All**) button.

NOTE:


- The options automatically return to default statuses when the next copy service is initiated or the auto clear timer expires.

- 4 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.



NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the  (**Start**) button to make copies.

NOTE:

- After a copy job is completed, the copy options would be kept until the screen returns to *Select Function* (auto-reset or the  (**Back**) button is pressed), the  (**Clear All**) button is pressed, or the **Copy** button is pressed again.

This section includes:

- ["Number of Copies" on page 176](#)
- ["Color" on page 176](#)
- ["Collated" on page 177](#)
- ["Reduce/Enlarge" on page 178](#)
- ["Document Size" on page 180](#)
- ["Original Type" on page 181](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 182](#)
- ["Sharpness" on page 183](#)
- ["Auto Exposure" on page 184](#)
- ["Color Balance R" on page 184](#)
- ["Color Balance G" on page 184](#)
- ["Color Balance B" on page 185](#)
- ["Gray Balance" on page 185](#)
- ["N-Up" on page 186](#)
- ["Margin Top/Bottom" on page 188](#)
- ["Margin Left/Right" on page 189](#)
- ["Margin Middle" on page 190](#)

■ Number of Copies

Specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad.
- 4 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Color

Select a mode from color or black and white copying.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.


See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Press the **Color Mode** button to select the desired color mode.
- 4 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

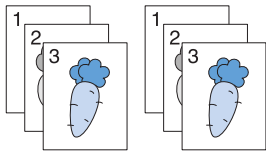
See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Collated

Sort the copy outputs. For examples, if you make two copies of three page documents, first set of three-pages documents will be printed followed by the second set.



NOTE:

- Copying documents with a large amount of data may exhaust available memory. If a memory shortage occurs, cancel the collating by turning **Collated** to **Off** on the operator panel.
- 1** For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.
- For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
 - ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)
- 2** Press the **Copy** button.
- 3** Select **Collated**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4** Select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Off*	Does not sort the copy output.
On	Sorts the copy outputs.
Auto (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	Sorts the copy outputs if multiple-sheet documents are scanned with the ADF.

- 5** If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.
- See also:**
- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)
- 6** Press the **Start** button to begin copying.

■ Reduce/Enlarge

Reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image, from 25% to 400%.

NOTE:



- When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy. Size reducing may cause black lines to appear at the bottom of copies.
- This item is available only when N-Up is set to Off or Manual.

1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select Reduce/Enlarge, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired settings, and then press the  button.

• **mm series**

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

200%
A5→A4 (141%)
A5→B5 (122%)
100%*
B5→A5 (81%)
A4→A5 (70%)
50%

• **inch series**

200%
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
100%*
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
50%

NOTE:

- You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the ► button to increase the zoom ratio or press the ◀ button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% interval. See the following table for specific zoom ratios.

Copy	A5	B5	A4
Original			
A5	100%	122%	141%
B5	81%	100%	115%
A4	70%	86%	100%

The methods to load print media vary depending on the size and orientation of the print media. For details, refer to ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 134](#) or ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#).

For print media that can be loaded, refer to ["Usable Print Media" on page 131](#).

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the ◀ (Start) button to begin copying.

■ Document Size



Specify the default document size.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select Document Size, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired settings, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

A4 (210 × 297mm) *
A5 (148 × 210mm)
B5 (182 × 257mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13")
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)
Legal (8.5 × 14")
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)
Executive (7.25 × 10.5")

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Original Type



Select the copy image quality.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select **Original Type**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired settings, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Text	Suitable for document contains mostly text.
Mixed*	Suitable for document contains photos/text/gray tones.
Photo	Suitable for document contains mostly photos.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies and copy size.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Lighten/Darken



Adjust density level to create lighter or darker copy of original document.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select **Lighten/Darken**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired settings, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Lighten2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Sharpness



Adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select Sharpness, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired settings, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Auto Exposure

Suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select **Auto Exposure**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the **Start** button to begin copying.

■ Color Balance R

Specify the default color balance level of red within the range of -2 to +2.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Defaults Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select **Copy Defaults**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **Color Balance R**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select the desired value, and then press the **OK** button.





■ Color Balance G

Specify the default color balance level of green within the range of -2 to +2.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Defaults Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select **Copy Defaults**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **Color Balance G**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select the desired value, and then press the **OK** button.

■ Color Balance B

Specify the default color balance level of blue within the range of -2 to +2.





- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Copy Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Color Balance B`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired value, and then press the  button.

■ Gray Balance

Specify the default gray balance level within the range of -2 to +2.

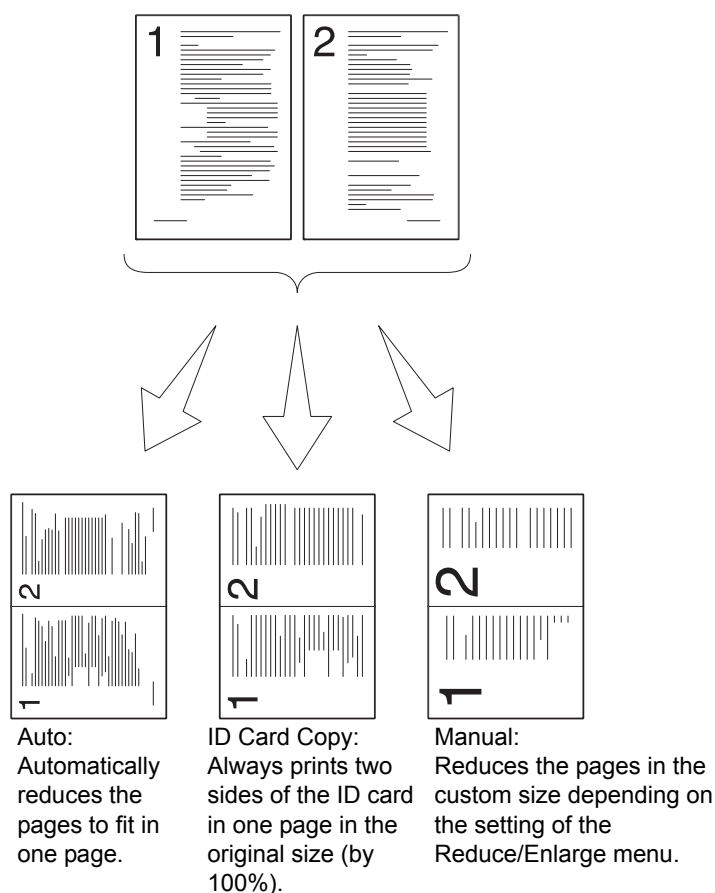
NOTE:

- This option is effective only for black and white copying.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Copy Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Gray Balance`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired value, and then press the  button.

■ N-Up

Print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper.




- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select **N-Up**, and then press the **OK** button.

- 4 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.


Off*	Does not perform N-Up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Card Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size (only for Off or Manual) and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

When you are using the document glass and N-Up is set to Auto, ID Card Copy, or Manual, the display prompts you for another page. Select Yes or No, and then press the  button.

If you select Yes, select Continue or Cancel, and then press the  button.

■ Margin Top/Bottom





Specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select **Margin Top/Bottom**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the .

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

4mm*/0.2 inch*	Factory default setting.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

■ Margin Left/Right

Specify the left and right margins of the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select **Margin Left/Right**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Press the **▲** or **▼** button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the **OK** button.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

4mm*/0.2 inch*	Factory default setting.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:

- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the **Start** button to begin copying.

■ Margin Middle





You can specify the middle margin of the copy.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Copy** button.
- 3 Select **Margin Middle**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the .

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

0mm*/0.0 inch*	Factory default setting.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings such as the number of copies, copy size, and image quality.

See also:






- ["Setting Copy Options" on page 175](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin copying.

Changing the Default Settings

The COPY menu options such as color mode and image quality can be set to your most frequent use modes.

To create your own default settings:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Copy Defaults` and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad and then press the  button.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Scanning

This chapter includes:

- ["Scanning Overview" on page 194](#)
- ["Scanning to a Computer" on page 195](#)
- ["Scanning to a Computer or Server via SMB/FTP \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 202](#)
- ["Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 226](#)
- ["Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 227](#)
- ["Adjusting Scanning Options" on page 230](#)

Scanning Overview

You can use your printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it into your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning beyond these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a recommended resolution mentioned in the above table, reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and crop it before scanning the image.

■ Scanning - From Computer

- To scan and export the scanned data to a graphic software application such as the Adobe® Photoshop® using the TWAIN driver, see ["Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver" on page 198](#). This method is supported both on the Microsoft® Windows® and Mac OS X operating systems but requires a USB or network connection and a graphic software application.
- To scan and export the scanned data to Microsoft's program such as the Windows Photo Gallery and the Microsoft Paint, using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver, see ["Scanning Using the WIA Driver" on page 200](#). This method is supported only on the Windows operating system and requires a USB or network (WSD only) connection.

NOTE:

- WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

■ Scanning - From Printer

- To scan and send the scanned data to a computer connected with a USB cable, see ["Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application" on page 195](#). This method is supported both on the Windows and Mac OS X operating systems but requires a USB connection and the Express Scan Manager, a bundled software tool. The scanned data will be saved in the location on your computer that is specified on the Express Scan Manager.
- To scan and send the scanned data to a computer connected to a network via the WSD, see ["Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 196](#).
- To scan and send the scanned data to a computer or server connected to a network, see ["Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 225](#).
- To scan and save the scanned data onto a USB storage device, see ["Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 226](#).
- To scan and send the scanned data through e-mail, see ["Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 227](#).

Scanning to a Computer

This section includes:

- ["Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application" on page 195](#)
- ["Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 196](#)
- ["Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver" on page 198](#)
- ["Scanning Using the WIA Driver" on page 200](#)

■ Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:



- Make sure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.
- You must use the Express Scan Manager on your computer to configure the output destination of the scanned image files.
- This service is supported both on the Windows and Mac OS X operating systems.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Scan** button.
- 3 Select **Scan to Application**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Configure the scanning settings as necessary.
- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button.

A scanned image file is saved to the location you have specified on the Express Scan Manager.

NOTE:

- If the window to select the program appears on your computer, select **Express Scan Manager-Btype**, and then click **OK**.
- File type of scanned data varies depending on application on computer.

See also:

- ["Express Scan Manager" on page 63](#)

■ Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

If the printer is connected to a computer via network using Web Services on Devices (WSD), you can use the Scan to WSD function to send scanned images to a computer.

NOTE:

- To use Scan to WSD, you need to setup connection using WSD.
- WSD is supported only on Windows Vista®, Windows 7 and Windows 8.

Printer Setup for Scan to WSD

Setup the printer and computer for connection using WSD.

• Checking the Printer Setting

To use the Scan to WSD function, WSD needs to be set to `Enable`. See ["Protocol" on page 281](#) for details.

• Setting Up the Computer

NOTE:

- For Windows 8, a computer automatically connects the printer using WSD. There is no need to install the printer manually.

For Windows 7:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Computer** → **Network**.
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.
The printer is connected by WSD.

For Windows Vista:





- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.
- 3 Click **Continue**.
The printer is connected by WSD.

Procedures for WSD Scan

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Scan** button.
- 3 Select `Scan to WSD`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Ensure that `Scan to` is highlighted, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select a desired computer you want to send the scan job, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select a desired scan event, and then press the  button.

Options are :

- Scan
- ScanToPrint
- ScanToEmail
- ScanToFax
- ScanToOCR

- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button.

■ Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) driver for scanning images. TWAIN is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, and Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8, and works with various scanners.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to the computer with a USB cable or to a network.

The following procedure to scan an image uses Microsoft Clip Organizer as an example.

- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

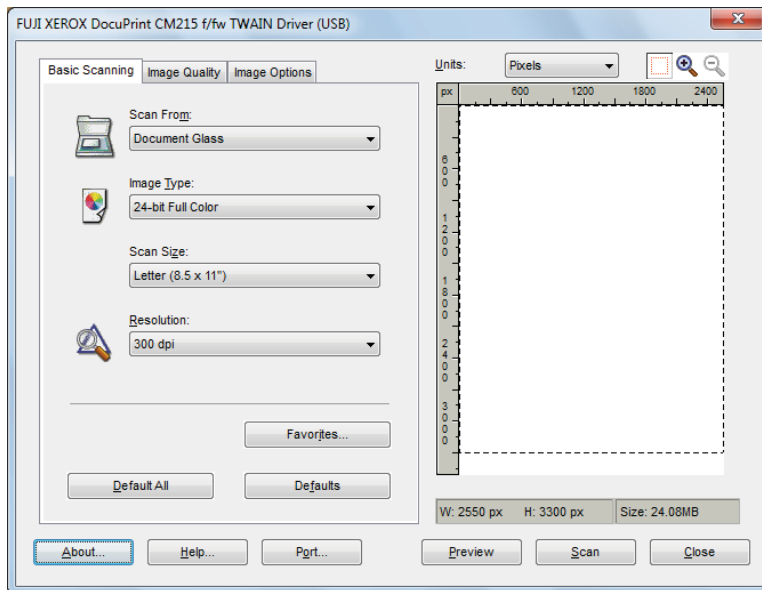
- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Microsoft Office** → **Microsoft Office 2010 Tools** → **Microsoft Clip Organizer**.
- 3 Click **File** → **Add Clips to Organizer** → **From Scanner or Camera**.
- 4 In the **Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera** window, under **Device**, select your TWAIN device.
- 5 Click **Custom Insert**.

- 6 Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

NOTE:

- For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, **Preview** is grayed out and disabled when you select **Document Feeder Tray** from **Scan From**.
- File type of scanned data vary depends on application on computer.



- 7 Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.

- 8 Click **Scan** to start scanning.

The scanned image file is generated.

■ Scanning Using the WIA Driver

Your printer also supports the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.
- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, firstly load the top edge of document(s) with facing up into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

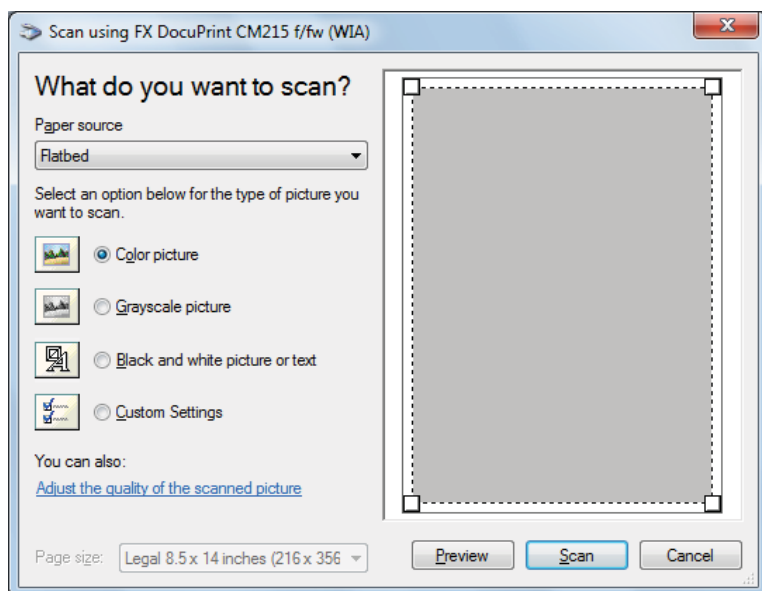
- 2 Start the drawing software, such as Paint for Windows.

NOTE:

- When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use Windows Photo Gallery instead of Paint.

- 3 Click the **Paint** button → **From scanner or camera**.

The WIA window appears.



- 4 Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** window.
- 5 Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Scan** to start scanning.

- 7 Click the **Paint** button → **Save as**.
- 8 Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.

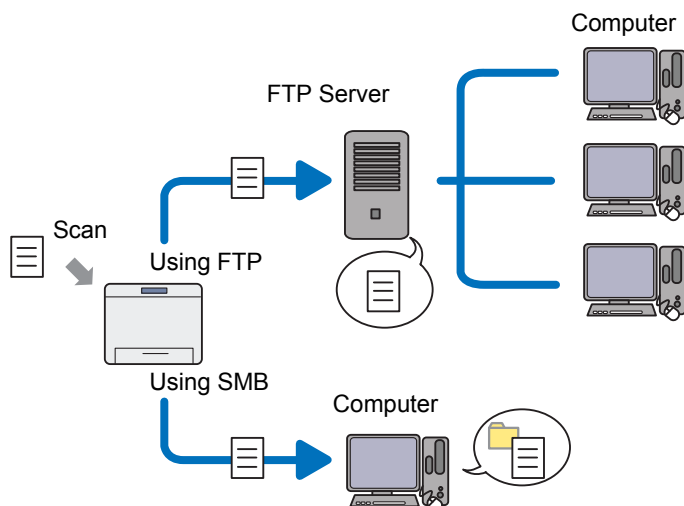
Scanning to a Computer or Server via SMB/FTP (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

This section includes:

- ["Overview" on page 202](#)
- ["Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 204](#)
- ["Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 206](#)
- ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 219](#)
- ["Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 225](#)

■ Overview

The Scan to Server/Computer feature allows you to scan documents and send the scanned document to a network computer via the FTP or SMB protocol.



You can select the kind of the server and specify a destination to store the scanned document with the CentreWare Internet Services or the Address Book Editor.

The following items are required to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

- Using SMB

To transfer data via SMB, your computer must run on one of the following operating systems that includes folder sharing.

For Mac OS X, a shared user account is required on the Mac OS X.

- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows XP
- Windows Vista
- Windows 7
- Windows 8
- Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

- Using FTP

To transfer data via FTP, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

- Windows XP

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Server 3.0/4.0 or Internet Information Services 5.0/5.1

- Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0

- Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012

FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 8.0

- Mac OS X

FTP service of Mac OS X 10.4.2/10.4.4/10.4.8/10.4.9/10.4.10/10.4.11/10.5/10.6/10.7/10.8

For information on how to configure the FTP service, contact your system administrator.

Follow the procedure below to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

["Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 204](#)



["Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 206](#)



["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 219](#)



["Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 225](#)

■ Confirming a Login name and Password

When Using SMB

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.



If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password for your user login account with the following procedure.

• For Windows XP:

- 1 Click **start** → **Control Panel** → **User Accounts**.
- 2 Click **Change an account**.
- 3 Select your account.
- 4 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

• For Windows Server 2003:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Computer Management**.
- 2 Click **Local Users and Groups**.
- 3 Double-click **Users**.
- 4 Right-click your account, and then select **Set Password**.

NOTE:

- When an alert message appears, confirm the message and then click **Proceed**.

- 5 Add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows Vista and Windows 7:**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:**

- 1 Place the mouse pointer in the upper right corner of the screen and move the mouse down, and then select **Settings** → **Change PC settings**.
- 2 Click **Users**.
- 3 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2:**

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Click **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Create a password** for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

- **For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6:**

- 1 Click **System Preferences** → **Accounts**.
- 2 Select your account.
- 3 Select **Change Password**.
- 4 Enter a password for your user login account in **New Password** (**New password** for Mac OS X 10.6).
- 5 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.
- 6 Click **Change Password**.

After you confirmed a login user name and password, go to ["Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 206](#).

When Using FTP

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user name and a password. For your user name and password, contact your system administrator.

■ Specifying a Destination to Store the Document

When Using SMB

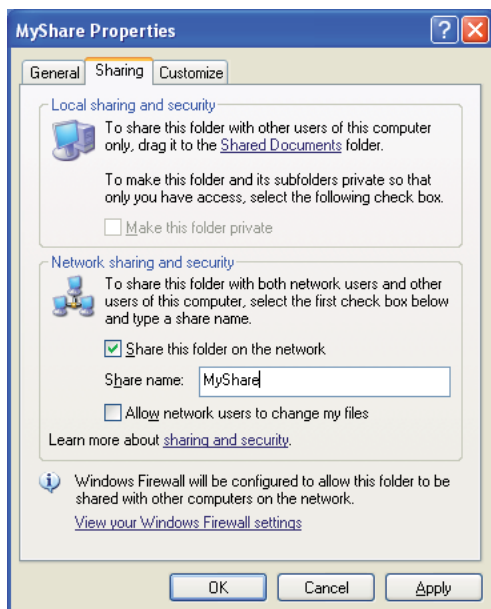
Share a folder to store the scanned document using the following procedure.

• For Windows XP Home Edition:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.
- 4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

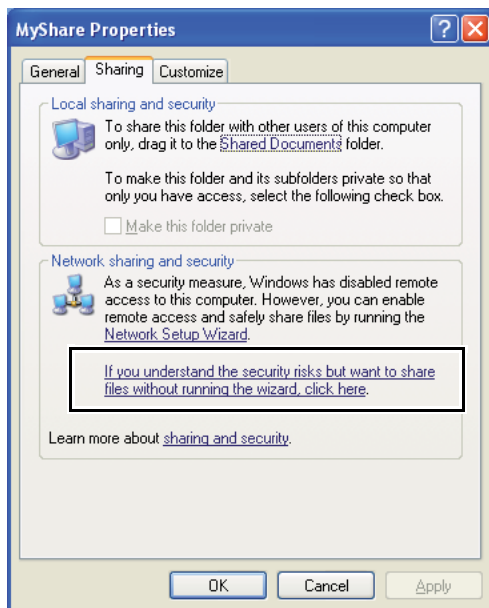
NOTE:

- Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



NOTE:

- When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.



5 Select **Allow network users to change my files**.

6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

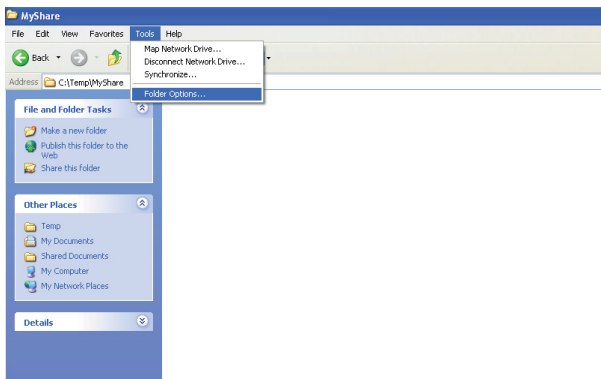
NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name, **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

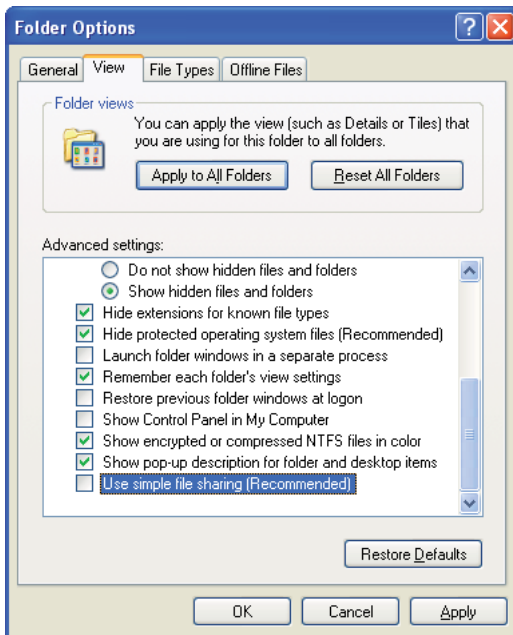
After you created a folder, go to ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 219](#).

• For Windows XP Professional Edition:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**) and double-click the folder.
- 2 Select **Folder Options** from **Tools**.



- 3 Click **View** tab, and then deselect the **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)** check box.



- 4 Click **OK**, and then close the window.
- 5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 6 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.

- 7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

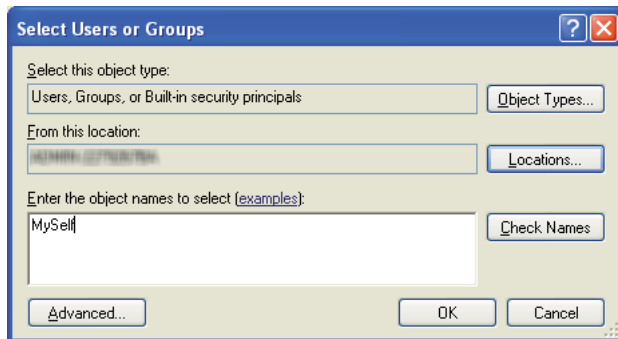
- Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



- 8 Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

- 9 Click **Add**.

- 10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

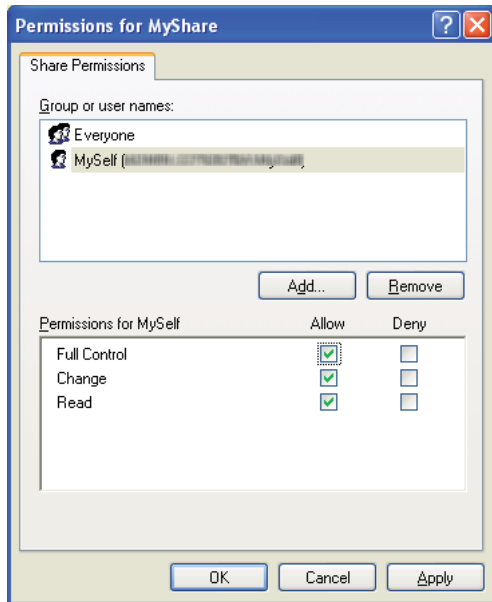


- 11 Click **OK**.

- 12** Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 13** Click **OK**.
- 14** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

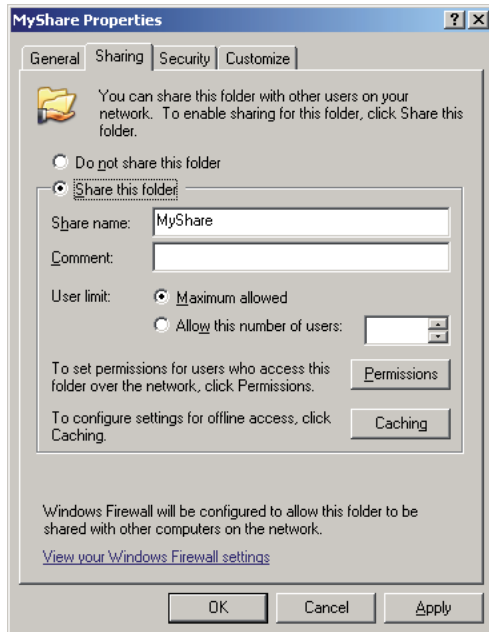
NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 219](#).

• For Windows Server 2003:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select the **Share this folder**.

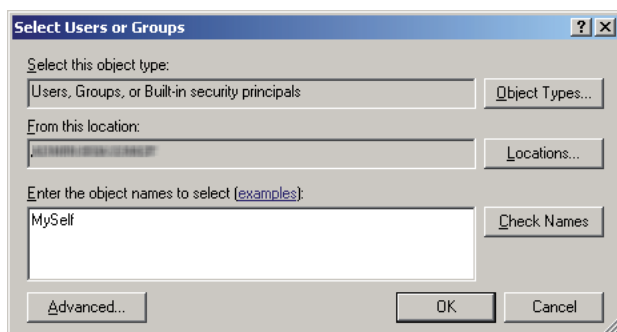


- 4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 5 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.
- 6 Click **Add**.
- 7 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).

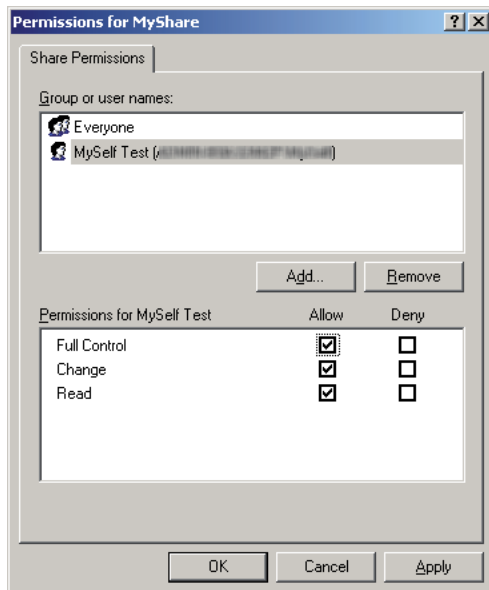


- 8 Click **OK**.

- 9 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 10 Click **OK**.
- 11 Configure other settings as necessary, and then click **Apply** and click **OK**.

NOTE:

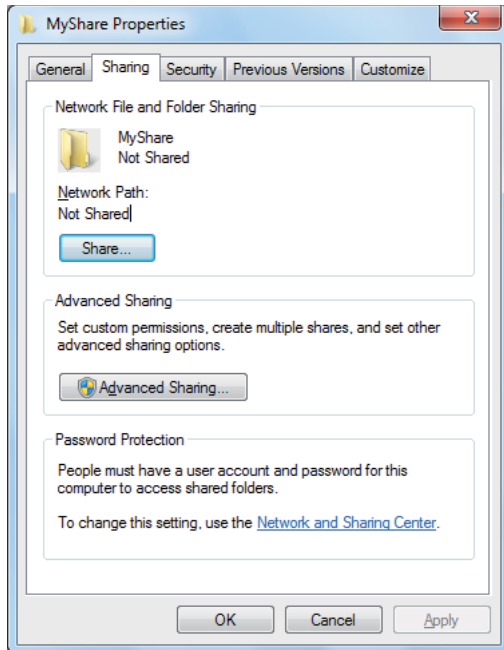
- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 219](#).

- **For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2:**

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.

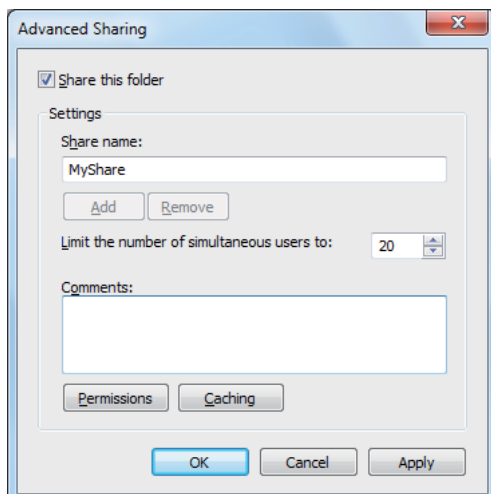
For Windows Vista, when **User Account Control** window appears, click **Continue**.



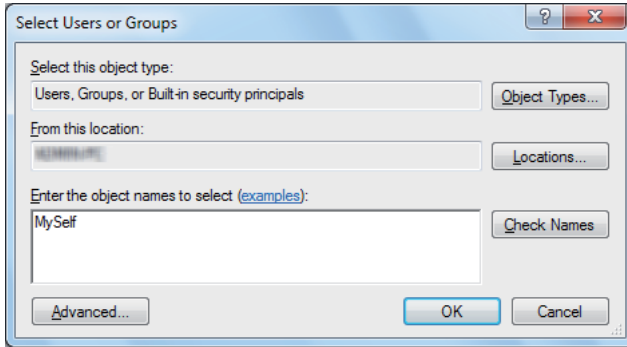
- 4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.
- 5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



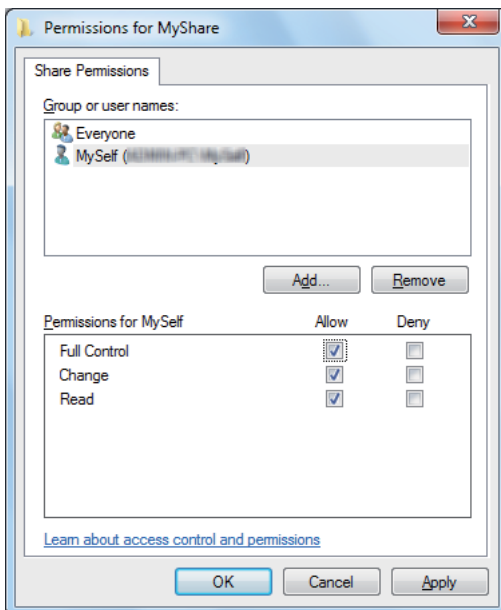
- 6 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.
- 7 Click **Add**.
- 8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, **MySelf**).



- 9 Click **OK**.
- 10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 11 Click **OK**.
- 12 Click **OK** to exit the **Advanced Sharing** window.

13 Click **Close**.

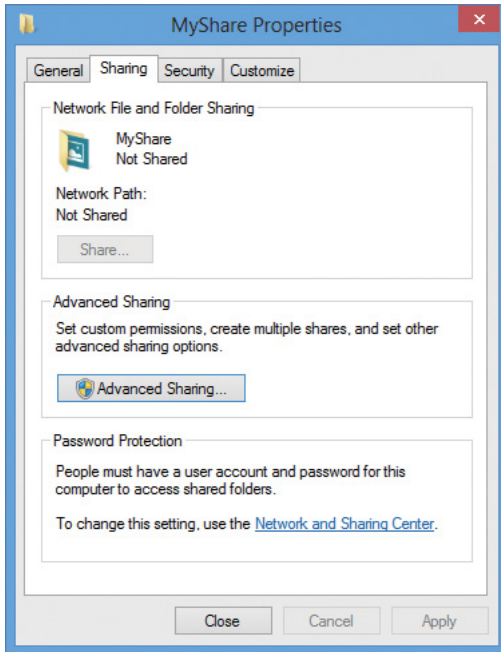
NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 219](#).

• For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

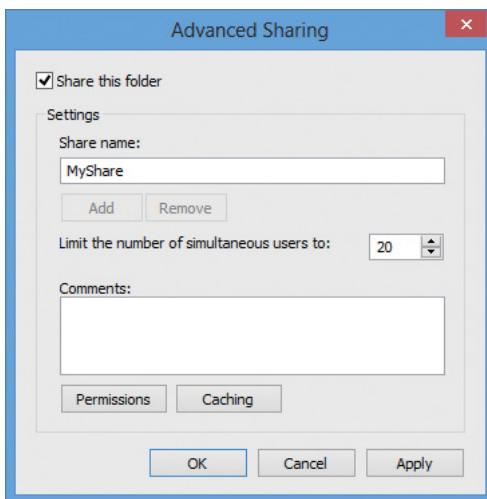
- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name: **MyShare**).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then click **Advanced Sharing**.



- 4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.
- 5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

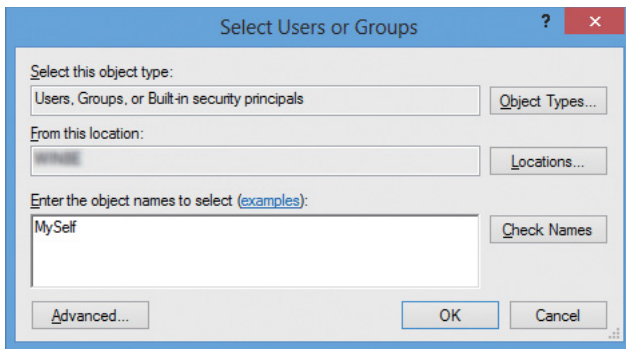
NOTE:

- Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



- 6 Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
- 7 Click **Add**.

- 8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name: **MySelf**).

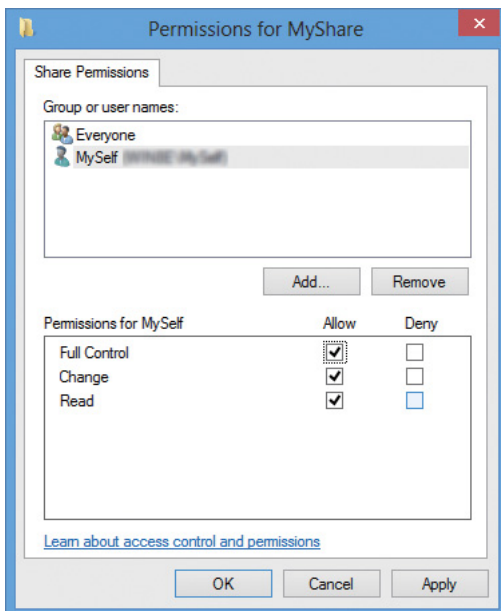


- 9 Click **OK**.

- 10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

NOTE:

- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



- 11 Click **OK**.
- 12 Click **OK** to exit the **Advanced Sharing** dialog box.
- 13 Click **Close**.

NOTE:

- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to ["Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 219](#).

• For Mac OS X 10.4:

- 1 Select **Home** from the **Go** menu.
- 2 Double-click **Public**.
- 3 Create a folder (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

NOTE:

- Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 5 Select the **Personal File Sharing** check box and the **Windows Sharing** check box.

• For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, **MyShare**).

NOTE:

- Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 2 Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.
- 3 Select the **Shared Folder (Shared folder for Mac OS X 10.6)** check box, and then close the window.
- 4 Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.
- 5 Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.
- 6 Select the **Share files and folders using SMB (Share files and folders using SMB (Windows))** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box and your account name.
- 7 Enter your account password, and then click **OK**.
- 8 Click **Done**.

When Using FTP

For a destination to store the document, contact your system administrator.

■ Configuring the Printer Settings

You can configure the printer settings to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature with the CentreWare Internet Services or Address Book Editor.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

From the CentreWare Internet Services

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:

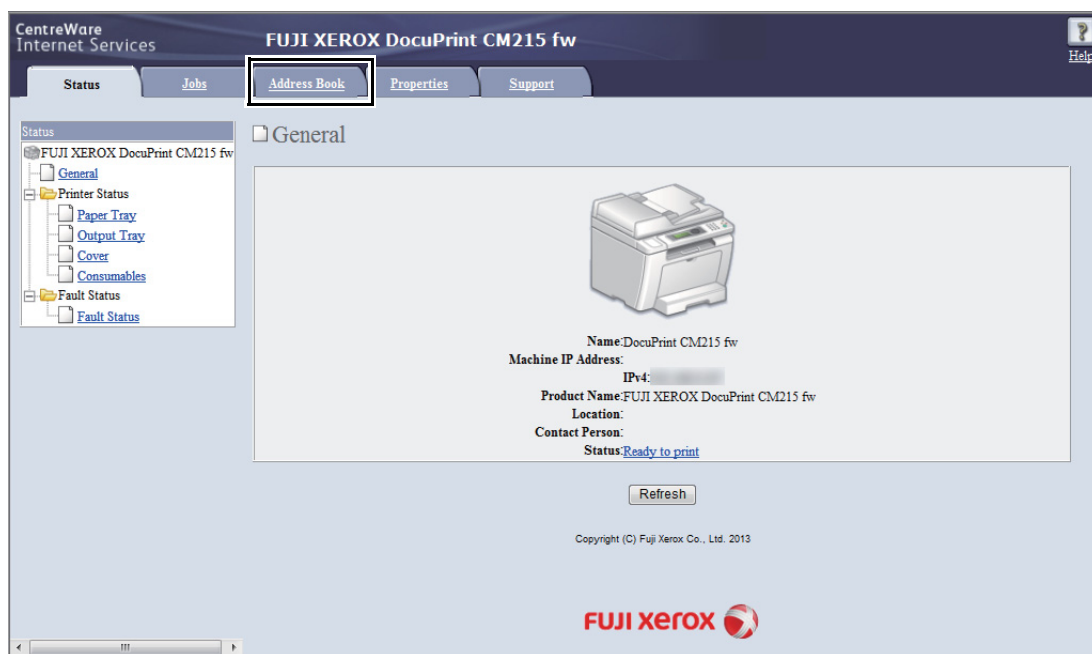
- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see ["Verifying the IP Settings" on page 87](#).

- 3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

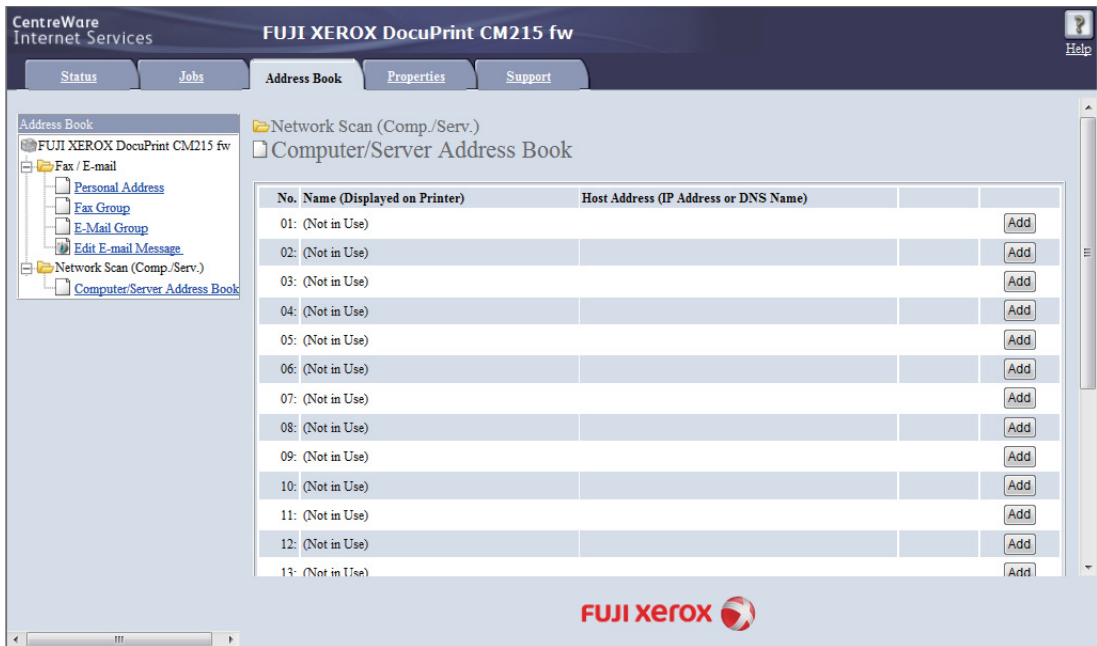
NOTE:

- The default User ID and password are **11111** and **x-admin** respectively.



- 4 Under **Network Scan (Comp./Serv.)**, click **Computer/Server Address Book**.

5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.




The **Add Network Scan Address** page appears.

No.	01
1— Name (Displayed on Printer)	<input type="text"/>
2— Network Type	* Computer SMB ▼
3— Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)	<input type="text"/>
4— Port Number	<input type="text"/> FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)
5— Login Name (if required by host)	<input type="text"/>
6— Login Password	•••• <input type="password"/>
7— Re-enter Password	•••• <input type="password"/>
8— Name of Shared Directory	<input type="text"/> e.g. SMB(Share, Sharedfolder)
9— Subdirectory Path (optional)	<input type="text"/>

6 To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	Name (Displayed on Printer)	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	Network Type	Select Server FTP if you use a FTP server. Select Computer SMB if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.

3	Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name)	<p>Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.</p> <p>The following are examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Server FTP: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100 For Computer SMB: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100
4	Port Number	Enter the server port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 21 for FTP and 139 for SMB.
5	Login Name (if required by host)	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
6	Login Password	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
		<p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Make sure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 204 for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
7	Re-enter Password	Re-enter your password.
8	Name of Shared Directory	<p>For Computer SMB only.</p> <p>On the Windows operating system, enter the share name of the folder to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.</p> <p>On the Mac OS, enter the folder name to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.</p>
9	Subdirectory Path (optional)	<p>For Computer SMB</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.</p> <p>Example: Share Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John</p> <p>You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.</p>  <pre> graph TD A[MyShare (Share folder)] --> B[MyPic] B --> C[John] </pre> <p>In this case, enter the following item.</p> <p>Server Path: MyPic\John</p> <p>For Server FTP</p> <p>Enter the server path to store the scanned document.</p>

7 Click **Apply**.

After you configured settings, go to ["Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 225](#).

From the Address Book Editor

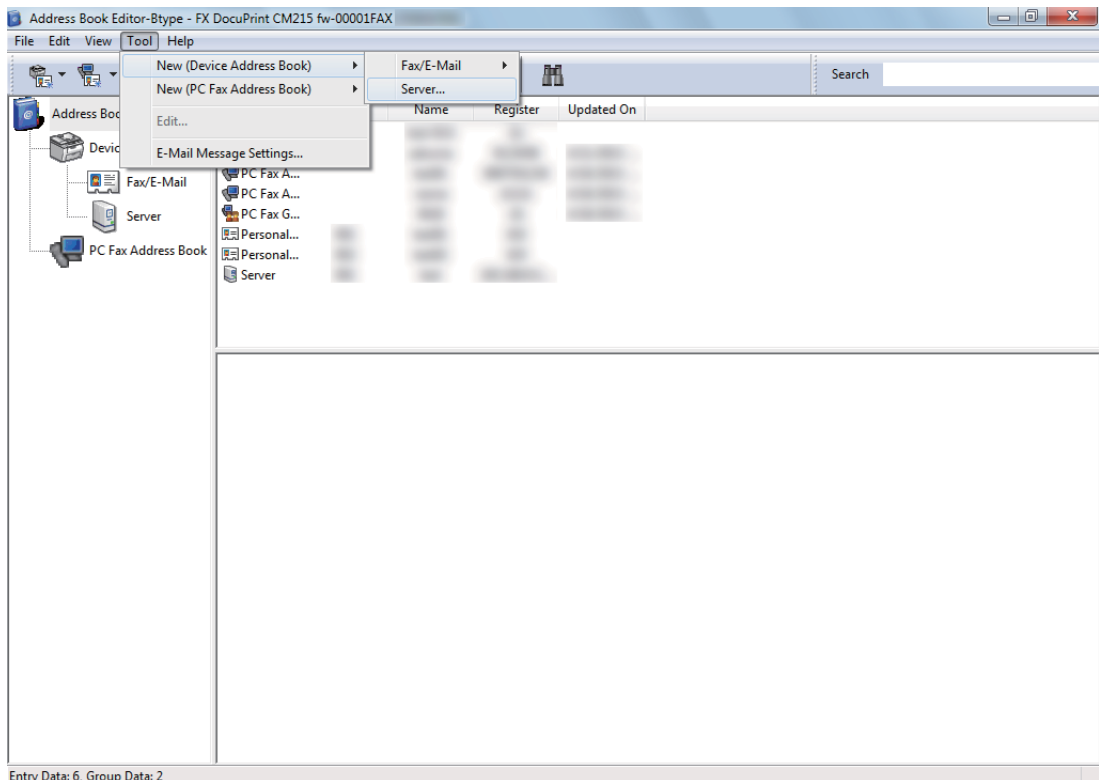
- 1 Click **start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Address Book Editor**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a device appears when multiple fax drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Device Name**.
- The **Enter Password** window appears when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK**.

- 2 Click **OK** on the "Retrieval Successful" message window.

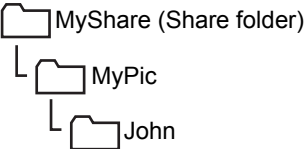
- 3 Click **Tool** → **New (Device Address Book)** → **Server**.



The **Server Address** window appears.

4 To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Address Book.
2	Server Type	Select Computer if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer. Select Server if you use a FTP server.
3	Computer Settings wizard	For Computer only. Clicking this button opens the wizard screen which guides you through several steps. When you complete the steps in the wizard, the settings for Server Address are automatically configured. For details, click the Help button.
4	Server Name / IP Address	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out. The following are examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Computer: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100 For Server: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100
5	Share Name	For Computer only. Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer.

6	Path	<p>For Computer</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.</p> <p>Example: Share Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John</p> <p>You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.</p>  <pre> graph TD A[MyShare (Share folder)] --> B[MyPic] B --> C[John] </pre> <p>In this case, enter the following item.</p> <p>Path: MyPic\John</p> <p>For Server</p> <p>Enter the path to store the scanned document.</p>
7	Login Name	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
8	Login Password	<p>Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.</p> <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Server/Computer feature. Make sure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 204 for details on how to add a password in your user login account).
9	Confirm Login Password	Re-enter your password.
10	Port Number	Enter the port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.

5 Click **OK**.

6 Click the **Save All** icon on the toolbar.




After you configured settings, go to ["Sending the Scanned File to the Network" on page 225](#).

■ Sending the Scanned File to the Network

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass.

See also:



- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Press the **Scan** button.
- 3 Select `Scan to Network`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Scan to`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Computer (Network)` or `Server (FTP)`, or `Search Address Book`, and then press the  button.

`Computer (Network)`: Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.

`Server (FTP)`: Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.

`Search Address Book`: Select the server address registered in Address Book.

- 6 Select the destination to store the scanned file in, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select scanning options as required.
- 8 Press the  (**Start**) button to send the scanned files.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device

The Scan to USB Memory feature allows you to scan documents and save the scanned data to a USB storage device. To scan documents and save them, follow the steps below:

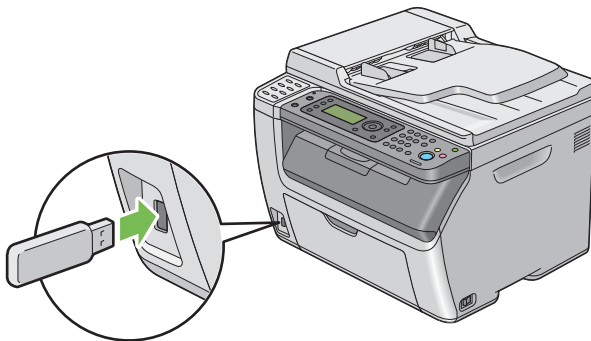
- 1 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, load the top edge of document(s) first with facing up into the ADF or place a single document face down on the document glass and close the document cover.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, place a single document facing down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)

- 2 Insert the USB storage device into the USB drive on your printer.



USB Memory appears.

- 3 Select **Scan to**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **Save to Root** or a folder to save file, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select scanning options as required.
- 6 Press the **Start** button.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select **Yes** or **No**, and then press the **OK** button.

If you select **Yes**, place the next page on the document glass, select **Continue** and then press the **OK** button.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

- Set up your SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server information. SMTP is a protocol for sending e-mail. Refer to the Setup Guide for more details.
- Set up the E-mail Address Book through the CentreWare Internet Services. See ["Setting an E-mail Address Book" on page 227](#) for more details.

■ Setting an E-mail Address Book

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:

- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see ["Verifying the IP Settings" on page 87](#).

- 3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

NOTE:

- The default User ID and password are **11111** and **x-admin** respectively.

- 4 Under **Fax / E-mail**, click **Personal Address**.

No.	Name	Phone Number	Address	
001:	(Not in Use)			Add
002:	(Not in Use)			Add
003:	(Not in Use)			Add
004:	(Not in Use)			Add
005:	(Not in Use)			Add
006:	(Not in Use)			Add
007:	(Not in Use)			Add
008:	(Not in Use)			Add
009:	(Not in Use)			Add
010:	(Not in Use)			Add
011:	(Not in Use)			Add
012:	(Not in Use)			Add
013:	(Not in Use)			Add
014:	(Not in Use)			Add
015:	(Not in Use)			Add

- 5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.
The **Add Personal Address** page appears.

CentreWare
Internet Services

FUJI XEROX DocuPrint CM215 fw

Status Jobs Address Book Properties Support

Address Book

Fax / E-mail

Personal Address

Fax Group

E-Mail Group

Edit E-mail Message

Network Scan (Comp./Serv.)

Computer/Server Address Book

Fax / E-mail

Add Personal Address

No. 001

Name

Phone Number

E-mail Address

Apply Undo Back

FUJI xerox


- 6 Enter a name in the **Name** field and e-mail address in the **E-mail Address** field.
- 7 Click the **Apply** button.


■ Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass.


See also:


- ["Making Copies From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 174](#)
- ["Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 172](#)


- 2 Press the **Scan** button.
- 3 Select **Scan to E-Mail**, and then press the  button.



- 4 Select **E-Mail to**, and then press the  button.

- 5 Select the setting listed below, and then press the  button.

Keypad: Enter the e-mail address directly and then press the  button.


Address Book: Select the e-mail address registered in the E-mail Address Book, and then press the  button.

E-Mail Group: Select the e-mail group registered in the E-mail Groups, and then press the  button.

Search Address Book: Enter a text to search from the E-mail Address Book, and then press the  button. Select the e-mail address from the list, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Users need to be registered before you can select **Address Book** on the operator panel.

- 6 Select scanning options as required.
- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button to send e-mail.

Adjusting Scanning Options

This section includes:

- ["Adjusting the Default Scan Settings" on page 230](#)
- ["Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job" on page 233](#)

■ Adjusting the Default Scan Settings





This section includes:

- ["Setting the Scanned Image File Type" on page 230](#)
- ["Setting the Color Mode" on page 231](#)
- ["Setting the Scan Resolution" on page 231](#)
- ["Setting the Original Size" on page 232](#)
- ["Automatically Suppressing Background Variations" on page 232](#)

For a complete list of all of the defaults settings, see ["Defaults Settings" on page 303](#).

Setting the Scanned Image File Type

To specify the file type of the scanned image:





- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `File Format`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the type, and then press the  button.

Available types:

- PDF (factory default)
- TIFF
- JPEG

Setting the Color Mode





You can scan an image in color or in black and white. Selecting black and white significantly reduces the file size of the scanned images. An image scanned in color will have a larger file size than the same image scanned in black and white.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Color`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select one of the following options, and then press the  button.
 - `Black & White`: Scans in black and white mode. This is available only when `File Format` is set to `PDF` or `TIFF`.
 - `Color`: Scans in color mode. (factory default)

Setting the Scan Resolution

You may want to change the scan resolution depending on the way you plan to use the scanned image. Scan resolution affects both the size and image quality of the scanned image file. The higher the scan resolution, the larger the file size.

To select the scan resolution:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Resolution`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select one of the following options, and then press the  button:
 - `200 × 200dpi`: Produces the lowest resolution and smallest file size. (factory default)
 - `300 × 300dpi`: Produces medium resolution and a medium file size.
 - `400 × 400dpi`: Produces high resolution and a large file size.
 - `600 × 600dpi`: Produces the highest resolution and largest file size.

Setting the Original Size

To specify the size of the original:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select `Document Size`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select a specific paper size to determine the area to be scanned, and then press the **OK** button.
The factory default setting is A4 (210 × 297mm).

Automatically Suppressing Background Variations

When scanning document has light grey background such as newspapers, the printer automatically can detect the background and whiten it when outputting the image.







To turn on/off automatic suppression:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select `Scan Defaults`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select `Auto Exposure`, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select either `On` or `Off`, and then press the **OK** button.
The factory default setting is `On`.





■ Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job

Scanning to a Computer

• Scan to Computer (Network) (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)






- 1 Press the **Scan** button.
- 2 Select `Scan to Network`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Scan to`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Computer (Network)`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the destination computer, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
- 7 Repeat steps 5 and 6 as needed.
- 8 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

• Scan to Computer (USB)

- 1 Press the **Scan** button.
- 2 Select `Scan to Application`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad and then press the  button.
- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 as needed.
- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

Emailing the Scanned Image (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

To temporarily change a scan setting when emailing the scanned image:

- 1 Press the **Scan** button.
- 2 Select `Scan to E-Mail`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the e-mail destination, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.
- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

Faxing (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

This chapter includes:

- ["Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236](#)
- ["Configuring Fax Initial Settings" on page 238](#)
- ["Sending a Fax" on page 241](#)
- ["Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 248](#)
- ["Sending a Fax from the Driver \(Direct Fax\)" on page 249](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax" on page 254](#)
- ["Automatic Dialing" on page 257](#)
- ["Other Ways to Fax" on page 262](#)
- ["Setting Sounds" on page 265](#)
- ["Specifying the Fax Settings" on page 266](#)
- ["Changing Setting Options" on page 270](#)
- ["Printing a Report" on page 271](#)

Connecting the Telephone Line

IMPORTANT:

- PTC 200 warning

General warning

The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services Warnings taken from Specification text

2.11.1 Compliance testing (6) & (7) (Functional tests)

"This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct operation at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

4.5.1 Off-hook line impedance

(4) "This equipment does not fully meet Telecom's impedance requirements. Performance limitations may occur when used in conjunction with some parts of the network. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

4.9.3 Non-voice equipment

(4) "This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

5.6.1 General requirements (automatic dialling devices)

(3) "This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service

5.5.5 User instructions

(4) If a charge for local calls is unacceptable, the 'Dial' button should NOT be used for local calls. Only the 7-digits of the local number should be dialled from your telephone. DO NOT dial the area code digit or the '0' prefix

8.1.7 User Instructions (automatic call set-up)

(b) This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service

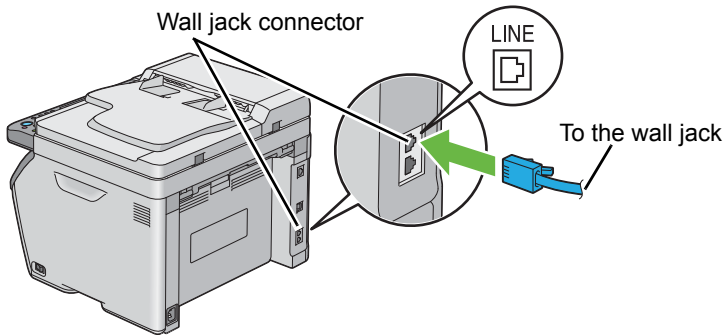
8.2.1(b) Call answering

When this equipment is set up call answering not within 3~30 sets., the telephone or answering machine shall answer incoming call with 3~30sec.

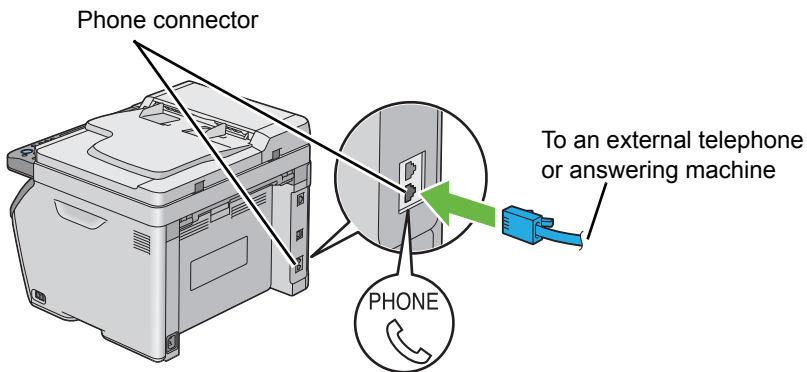
NOTE:

- Do not connect your printer directly to a DSL (digital subscriber line). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

- 1 Plug one end of a telephone line cord to the wall jack connector and the other end to an active wall jack.



- 2 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector (PHONE).



Configuring Fax Initial Settings

This section includes:

- ["Setting Your Region" on page 238](#)
- ["Setting the Printer ID" on page 239](#)
- ["Setting the Time and Date" on page 240](#)
- ["Changing the Clock Mode" on page 240](#)

NOTE:

- The following settings can be configured also using **Fax Setup** on the **FX Printer Setup** screen which is launched from the *Software Pack CD-ROM*.

■ Setting Your Region

You need to set the region where your printer is used for using the fax service on the printer.




- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **Region**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select the region where the printer is used, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Confirm that **Restart System** is displayed, select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

NOTE:

- When you configure the region setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.



■ Setting the Printer ID

You may be required to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **Your Fax Number**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Enter your fax number using the numeric keypad.



NOTE:

- If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the **C (Clear)** button to delete the last digit.

- 6 Press the  button when the number on the LCD panel is correct.
- 7 Select **Company Name**, and then press the  button.
- 8 Enter your name or company name using the numeric keypad.

You can enter alphanumeric characters using the numeric keypad, including special symbols by pressing the 1, *, and # buttons.





For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see ["Using the Numeric Keypad" on page 320](#).

- 9 Press the  button when the name on the LCD panel is correct.
- 10 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.





■ Setting the Time and Date

NOTE:

- It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.







- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Clock Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Set Date`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Enter the correct date using the numeric keypad, or select the correct date.

NOTE:

- If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the ◀ button to re-enter the digit.
- 7 Press the  button when the date on the LCD panel is correct.
 - 8 Select `Set Time`, and then press the  button.
 - 9 Enter the correct time using the numeric keypad, or select the correct time.
 - 10 Press the  button when the time on the LCD panel is correct.
 - 11 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Clock Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Time Format`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select the desired format, and then press the  button.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer.

This section includes:

- ["Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 241](#)
- ["Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 242](#)
- ["Resolution" on page 243](#)
- ["Original Type" on page 243](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 244](#)
- ["Inserting a Pause" on page 244](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 245](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Manually" on page 246](#)
- ["Confirming Transmissions" on page 247](#)
- ["Automatic Redialing" on page 247](#)







■ Loading an Original Document on the ADF

IMPORTANT:

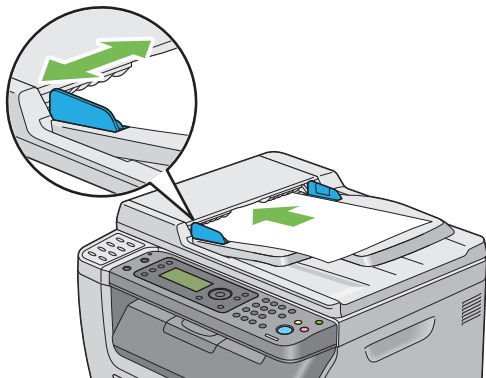
- Do not load more than 15 sheets into the automatic document feeder (ADF) or allow more than 15 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 15 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.
- You cannot load the following documents in the ADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

 Curled originals	 Pre-punched paper
 Lightweight originals	 Folded, creased or torn originals
 Cut and paste originals	 Carbon paper

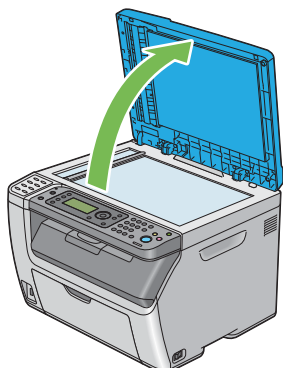
- 1 Place the document(s) facing up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



- 2 Adjust the document resolution, referring to ["Resolution" on page 243](#).

■ Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass

- 1 Open the document cover.

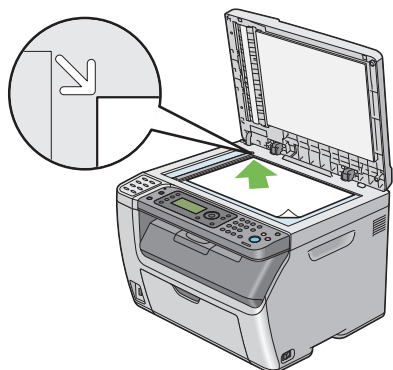


- 2 Place the document facing down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.



CAUTION:

- Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.



- 3 Adjust the document resolution, referring to ["Resolution" on page 243](#).
- 4 Close the document cover.

NOTE:

- Make sure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
- If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 20 mm, start faxing with the document cover open.

■ Resolution

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission:

- 1 Press the **Fax** button.
- 2 Select **Resolution**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select the desired menu item, and then press the **OK** button.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Standard *	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE:

- Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

■ Original Type

To select the default document type for the current fax job:

- 1 Press the **Fax** button.
- 2 Select **Original Type**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.



NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Text *	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

■ Lighten/Darken

To adjust the contrast to make the fax lighter or darker than the original:

- 1 Press the **Fax** button.
- 2 Select **Lighten/Darken**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the desired setting, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Lighten2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal *	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

■ Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the **Redial/Pause** button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the LCD panel to indicate when a pause is entered.

■ Sending a Fax Automatically

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.







See also:








- ["Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 241](#)
- ["Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 242](#)



- 2 Press the **Fax** button.
- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax documents.

See also:

- ["Resolution" on page 243](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 244](#)

- 4 You can select a fax number by one of the following way:
- Select **Fax to**, and then press the  button. Select **Keypad**, and then press the  button. Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
 - Press the **One-touch** button, and then press the  button.
 - Press the **Address Book** button, select **All Entries**, **Group Dial**, or **Search** using the  button, and then press the  button.


All Entries	Displays a list of registered fax numbers. Press the  button to select the recipients, and then press the  button.
Group Dial	Press the  button to select the recipients, and then press the  button.
Search	Searches a fax number from the Address Book. Enter the text you want to search, and then press the  button. Press the  button to select the recipients, and then press the  button.


- Press the **Redial/Pause** button to redial, and then press the  button.
- Press the **Speed Dial** button. Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Before you use the **One-touch** button, you need to register a number for any speed dial from 01 to 08. For more information on how to store the number, see ["Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 257](#).


- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select **Yes** or **No**, and then press the  button.

If you select **Yes**, place the next page on the document glass, select **Continue** and then press the  button.

The number is dialed and then the printer begins sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Sending a Fax Manually

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.








See also:

- ["Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 241](#)
- ["Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 242](#)

- 2 Press the **Fax** button.
- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:

- ["Resolution" on page 243](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 244](#)

- 4 Select OnHook, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select On, and then press the  button.
- 6 Enter the fax number by one of the following way.
 - Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad.
 - Press the One-touch button.
 - Press the **Address Book** button, press the  button to select the recipients, and then press the  button.
 - Press the **Speed Dial** button. Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
- 7 Press the  (**Start**) button.
- 8 Select Manual Send, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- Press the  (**Stop**) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the LCD panel.

If you receive an error message, press the  button to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission.

See also:

- ["Fax Transmit" on page 290](#)
- ["Fax Broadcast" on page 290](#)

■ Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see ["Redial Delay" on page 285](#) and ["Number of Redial" on page 285](#).

NOTE:

- The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.









See also:

- ["Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 241](#)
- ["Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 242](#)

- 2 Press the **Fax** button.
- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:


- ["Resolution" on page 243](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 244](#)

- 4 Select **Delayed Start**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select **On**, and then press the  button.
- 6 Enter the start time using the numeric keypad or press the  or  button to select the start time, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select **Fax to**, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select **Keypad**, and then press the  button.
- 9 Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.

You can also use speed dial or group dial numbers.

See also:

- ["Automatic Dialing" on page 257](#)

- 10 Press the  (**Start**) button.

Once the Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all the documents to be faxed to its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory will be cleared.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system or Mac OS X by using the driver.

NOTE:

- Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

This section includes:

- ["For Windows" on page 249](#)
- ["For Mac OS X" on page 252](#)

■ For Windows

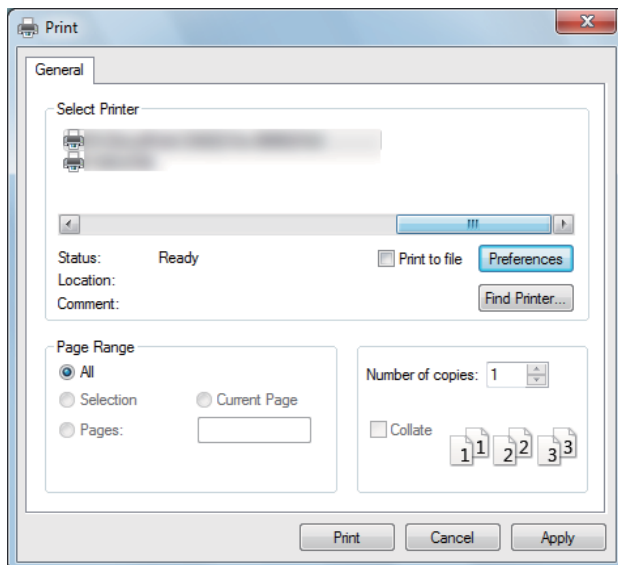
NOTE:

- The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.
- To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

See also:

- ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Windows" on page 89](#)

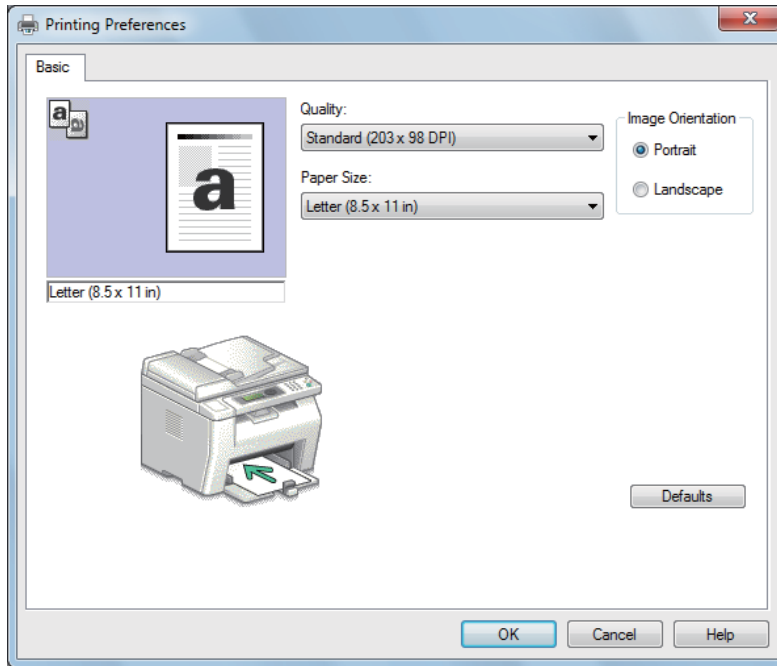
- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print window from the application, and then select your fax driver.
- 3 Click **Preferences**.



- 4 Specify the fax settings. For more information, click **Help** of the driver.

NOTE:

- The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.



- 5 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** window.
- 6 Click **Print**.
The **Set / Check Fax Transmission** window appears.

- 7 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:
- Enter a name and phone number directly.
 - Select a recipient from the PC Fax Address Book saved on your computer or Device Address Book.
 - Select a recipient from a database other than the PC Fax Address Book or Device Address Book.

For more information on how to specify the destination, click **Help** to see the Help of the fax driver.

Set / Check Fax Transmission: Untitled - Notepad

Recipient Setting

Name: Add>>

Phone Number: Edit<<

My Phone Book File: Browse...

Look Up Phone Book...

Import And Add file...

Authorization

Password:

Recipient List:

Phone Number	Name
--------------	------

Delete

Add to Phone Book

Delayed Send

☐ Delayed Send

Hour: Minute:

Start Sending Stop Sending Help

NOTE:

- Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

- 8 Click **Start Sending**.

■ For Mac OS X

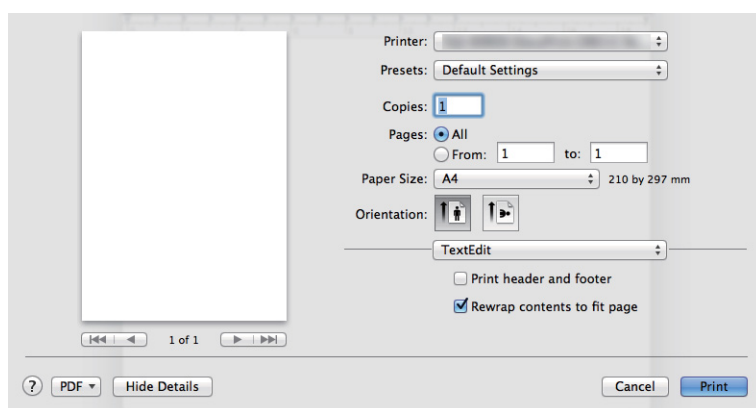
NOTE:

- The following procedure uses Mac OS X 10.8 TextEdit as an example. The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the OS and application you are using.
- When using a USB connection on Mac OS X 10.4.11, upgrade Common UNIX Printing System (CUPS) software to version 1.2.12 or later. You can download it from CUPS web site.
- To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

See also:

- ["Configuring Printer and Installing Software on Mac OS X" on page 120](#)

- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print window from the application, and then select your fax driver.



- 3 Specify the fax settings.

NOTE:

- The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

- 4 Click **Print**.

The **Set/Check Fax Transmission** window appears.

5 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:

- Specify a recipient directly.
 - a** Enter a name and phone number directly.
 - b** Click **Add**.

OR

- Select a recipient from the PC Fax Address Book saved on your computer.
 - a** Click **Look Up Address Book**.
The **Refer To Address Book** window appears.
 - b** On the **Look Up Address Book** tab, select a recipient and then click **Add**.
 - c** Click **OK**.

OR

- Select a recipient from the Device Address Book.
 - a** Click **Look Up Address Book**.
The **Refer To Address Book** window appears.
 - b** On the **Look Up Device Address Book** tab, select a recipient and then click **Add**.
 - c** Click **OK**.

NOTE:

- Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

6 Click **Start Sending**.

Receiving a Fax


This section includes:

- ["About Receiving Modes" on page 254](#)
- ["Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes" on page 254](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode" on page 254](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode" on page 255](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or ANS/FAX Mode" on page 255](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone" on page 255](#)
- ["Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode" on page 256](#)
- ["Receiving Faxes in the Memory" on page 256](#)
- ["Polling Receive" on page 256](#)

■ About Receiving Modes

There are five receiving modes; FAX Mode, TEL Mode, TEL/FAX Mode, ANS/FAX Mode, and DRPD Mode.

NOTE:

- To use TEL/FAX Mode or ANS/FAX Mode, attach an external telephone or answering machine to the phone connector () on the rear of your printer.
- When the memory is full, the fax is received in the TEL Mode.

See also:

- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode" on page 254](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode" on page 255](#)
- ["Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or ANS/FAX Mode" on page 255](#)
- ["Using an Answering Machine" on page 263](#)
- ["Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode" on page 256](#)

■ Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the priority sheet inserter (PSI) or multipurpose feeder (MPF) are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-, A4-, or Legal-sized paper.

See also:

- ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 134](#)
- ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#)
- ["Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 152](#)

■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode



Your printer is preset to FAX Mode at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.


To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call, see ["Auto Answer Fax" on page 283](#).

■ Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode

To receive a fax manually, pick up the handset of the external telephone, and follow the instructions below.

- 1 Press the **Fax** button when you hear fax tones on the external telephone.
OffHook appears.
- 2 Press the  (**Start**) button.
- 3 Select *Manual Receive*, and then press the  button.
The printer receives the document.

■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or ANS/FAX Mode

To use *TEL/FAX Mode* or *ANS/FAX Mode*, you must attach an external telephone to the phone connector () on the rear of your printer.

In the *TEL/FAX Mode*, if the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in *Auto Ans. TEL/FAX*, and then the printer automatically receives a fax.

In the *ANS/FAX Mode*, if the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.


NOTE:

- If you have set *Auto Answer Fax* and your answering machine is turned off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the fax receive mode after a predefined time.

See also:

- ["Using an Answering Machine" on page 263](#)

■ Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector () on the rear of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

Remote Receive is set to *Off* at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see ["Remote Rcv Tone" on page 285](#).

NOTE:





- Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

■ Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the DRPD option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up DRPD, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **DRPD Pattern**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 6 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD Mode. For more details, see ["Ans Select" on page 283](#).

Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

See also:




- ["DRPD Pattern" on page 287](#)

■ Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the toner cartridges, the printer automatically prints the fax.

■ Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

- 1 Press the **Fax** button.
- 2 Select **Polling Receive**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **On**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Enter the fax number of the remote machine, and then press the  button.

NOTE:

- For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see ["Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 245](#).

- 5 Press the  (**Start**) button.

Automatic Dialing

This section includes:












- ["Speed Dialing" on page 257](#)
- ["Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 257](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial" on page 258](#)
- ["Group Dialing" on page 259](#)
- ["Setting Group Dial" on page 259](#)
- ["Editing Group Dial" on page 260](#)
- ["Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing \(Multi-address Transmission\)" on page 260](#)
- ["Printing an Address Book List" on page 261](#)

■ Speed Dialing

You can store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (01– 99).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

■ Storing a Number for Speed Dialing




- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Phone Book**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **Speed Dial**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired speed dial number displayed as **Not in Use** between 01 and 99, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select **Name**, and then press the  button.
- 7 Enter the name, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select **Phone Number**, and then press the  button.
- 9 Enter the phone number you want to store using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
To insert a pause between numbers, press the **Redial/Pause** button. "-" appears on the LCD panel.
- 10 Select **Apply Settings**, and then press the  button.
- 11 Confirm that **Are You Sure?** is displayed, select **Yes**, and then press the  button.
- 12 To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 11.
- 13 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF or place a single document facing down on the document glass and close the document cover.



See also:

- ["Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 241](#)
- ["Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass" on page 242](#)

- 2 To enter the speed dial number, do either of the following after pressing the **Fax** button:
 - Select **Fax to**, and then press the  button. Select **Speed Dial**, and then press the  button.
 - Press the **Speed Dial** button.
- 3 Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad.
The corresponding entry's name briefly appears on the LCD panel.
- 4 Press the  button.
- 5 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:

- ["Resolution" on page 243](#)
- ["Lighten/Darken" on page 244](#)

- 6 Press the  (**Start**) button.
- 7 The document scans to the memory.
When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Select **Yes** to add more documents or to select **No** to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press the  button.
- 8 The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

NOTE:

- Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 0*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 01 and 09.












■ Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations. You can create up to six groups. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

NOTE:















- You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

■ Setting Group Dial

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Phone Book**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **Group Dial**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired group dial number between 01 and 06, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select **Name**, and then press the  button.
- 7 Enter the name, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select **Speed Dial No**, and then press the  button.
- 9 Select the speed dial numbers, and then press the  button.
- 10 Select **Apply Settings**, and then press the  button.
- 11 Confirm that **Are You Sure?** is displayed, select **Yes**, and then press the  button.
- 12 To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 5 to 11.
- 13 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
 - 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
 - 3 Select **Phone Book**, and then press the  button.
 - 4 Select **Group Dial**, and then press the  button.
 - 5 Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then press the  button.
 - 6 To change the speed dial number:
 - a Select **Speed Dial No**, and then press the  button.
 - b Select or deselect the desired speed dial number. Press the  button.
 - c Select **Apply Settings**, and then press the  button.
 - d Confirm that **Are You Sure?** is displayed, select **Yes**, and then press the  button.
 - 7 To change the group dial name:
 - a Select **Name**, and then press the  button.
 - b Enter a new name, and then press the  button.
 - c Select **Apply Settings**, and then press the  button.
 - d Confirm that **Are You Sure?** is displayed, select **Yes**, and then press the  button.
- NOTE:**
- When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.
- 8 To delete the group dial:
 - a Press the **C (Clear)** button.
 - b Confirm that **Are You Sure?** is displayed, select **Yes**, and then press the  button.
 - 9 If you want to edit another group dial number or enter a new group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 8.
 - 10 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for broadcasting or delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For delayed transmission, see ["Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 248](#)).

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.



Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the ADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

■ Printing an Address Book List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing an Address Book List.

NOTE:

- The list is printed in English.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Report / List`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Address Book`, and then press the  button.
A list of your speed dial and group dial entries is printed.

Other Ways to Fax

This section includes:

- ["Using the Secure Receiving Mode" on page 262](#)
- ["Using an Answering Machine" on page 263](#)
- ["Using a Computer Modem" on page 264](#)







■ Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure receiving mode using the `Secure Receive` option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure receiving mode, all incoming faxes will get saved in the memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

NOTE:

- Before operation, make sure that `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Enter the password for `Panel Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Secure Receive`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Secure Receive Set`, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select `Enable`, and then press the  button.



NOTE:

- The factory-default password is 0000.

- 8 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the `Job Status` screen displays `Secure Receive` to let you know that there is a fax stored.

NOTE:

- If you change the password while `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 5. Select `Change Password`, and then press the  button. Enter the new password, and then press the  button.

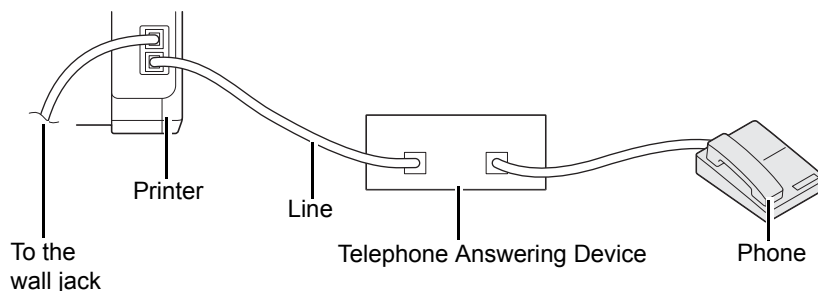
To print received documents:

- 1 Press the **Job Status** button.
- 2 Select **Secure Receive**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Enter the password, and then press the **OK** button.
The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

- 1 Access the **Secure Receive Set** menu by following steps 1 to 6 mentioned above in "[To turn the secure receiving mode on.](#)".
- 2 Select **Disable**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 To return to the previous screen, press the **↶ (Back)** button.

■ Using an Answering Machine



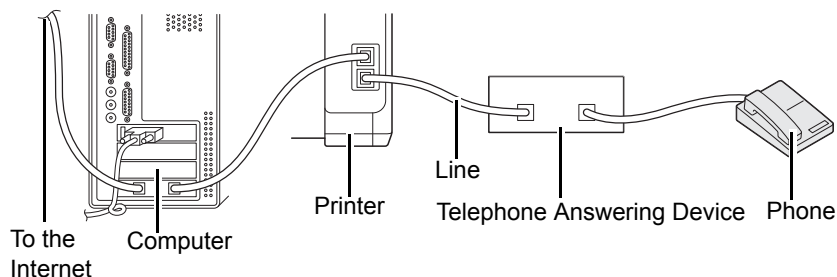
You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the rear of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to **ANS/FAX Mode** and set **Auto Ans. Ans/FAX** to specify the time for the TAD to respond.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the fax receive mode after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you
 - Set **OnHook** to **On** (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the **◇ (Start)** button, select **Manual Receive** and press the **OK** button, and then hang up the receiver.

OR

- Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

■ Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up Internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the rear of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to **ANS/FAX Mode** and set **Auto Ans. Ans/FAX** to specify the time for the TAD to respond.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Setting Sounds

This section includes:

- ["Speaker Volume" on page 265](#)
- ["Ringer Volume" on page 265](#)

■ Speaker Volume

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **Line Monitor**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select the desired volume, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

■ Ringer Volume






- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Select **Ring Tone Volume**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Select the desired volume, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Specifying the Fax Settings

This section includes:

- ["Changing the Fax Settings Options" on page 266](#)
- ["Available Fax Setting Options" on page 267](#)


■ Changing the Fax Settings Options

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Fax Settings**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad.
- 6 Press the  button to save the selection.
- 7 If necessary, repeat steps 4 to 6.
- 8 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

For details on available menu items, see ["Available Fax Setting Options" on page 267](#).

■ Available Fax Setting Options

You can use the following setting options for configuring the fax system:











Option		Description
Ans Select	TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the remote receive code, or setting OnHook to On (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), pressing the  (Start) button, and then selecting Manual Receive.
	FAX Mode *	Automatically receives faxes.
	TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	ANS/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your region, this mode is not supported.
	DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Answer Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.	
Auto Ans. TEL/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.	
Auto Ans. ANS/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.	
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.	
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Ans Select is set to TEL/FAX Mode.	
Line Type	Sets the line type.	
Dialing Type	Sets the dialing type.	
	NOTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The available values differ depending on your Region setting. 	
Interval Timer	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.	
Number of Redial	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.	
Redial Delay	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.	
Junk Fax Filter	Sets whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Address Book.	
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	

Option	Description
Remote Rcv Tone	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive.
Send Header	Sets whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Company Name	Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Your Fax Number	Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Sets the DRPD setting from Pattern1 to Pattern7. DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Forward Settings	Select Forward Only or Forward and Print to forward incoming faxes to the destination number specified for Fax Fwd Number. You can also select options such as E-Mail and Print to forward incoming faxes with an e-mail to the destination e-mail address specified for Fax Fwd E-Mail, and Forward to Server or Fwd to Server and Print to forward incoming faxes to the server address specified on the CentreWare Internet Services.
Fax Fwd Number	Enter the forwarding fax number when you have selected Forward Only or Forward and Print for Forward Settings.
Fax Fwd E-Mail	Enter the forwarding e-mail address when you have selected E-Mail and Print for Forward Settings.
Prefix Dial	Specifies whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Sets whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting Auto Reduction automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Extel Hook Thresh	You can select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.
Modem Speed	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Region	Sets the region where the printer is used.

• Prefix Dial

NOTE:






- Prefix Dial only supports the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select Admin Menu, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select Fax Settings, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select Line Type, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select PBX, and then press the  button.
- 6 Press the  (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.
- 7 Select Prefix Dial, and then press the  button.
- 8 Select On, and then press the  button.
- 9 Press the  (**Back**) button to return to the previous menu.
- 10 Select Prefix Dial Num, and then press the  button.
- 11 Enter an up-to-five-digit prefix number from 0–9, *, and #.
- 12 Press the  button when the prefix dial number on the LCD panel is correct.
- 13 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Changing Setting Options

The fax menu options can be set to the most frequently used modes.

To create your own default settings:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Defaults Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Fax Defaults`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select the desired menu item, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5, as needed.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

- Address Book List

This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the memory of the printer as Address Book information.

- Fax Activity Report

This report shows information about the recent 50 faxes you received or sent.

- Protocol Monitor

This report shows the status of the protocol when the latest fax was being sent.

- Monitor Report

This report shows the details of a fax job. This is printed when the fax was successfully sent.

- Transmission Report

This report shows the details of a fax job. This is printed when the fax transmission failed.



- Fax Broadcast Report

This report shows all the destinations of a broadcast fax and the transmission result for each destination.

NOTE:

- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

To print a report or list:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Report / List**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select the report or list you want to print, and then press the  button.
The selected report or list is printed.

NOTE:

- You cannot manually print Monitor Report, Transmission Report or Fax Broadcast Report using the procedure above. They are printed after a fax job completed according to the setting. For details on the setting of when to print them, see ["Fax Transmit" on page 290](#) or ["Fax Broadcast" on page 290](#).

Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad

This chapter includes:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 274](#)
- ["Panel Lock Function" on page 315](#)
- ["Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 317](#)
- ["Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode" on page 318](#)
- ["Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 319](#)
- ["Using the Numeric Keypad" on page 320](#)

Understanding the Printer Menus

This section describes menu options that can be accessed by pressing the **System** button on the operator panel.

This section includes:

- ["Report / List" on page 274](#)
- ["Meter Readings" on page 275](#)
- ["Admin Menu" on page 276](#)
- ["Defaults Settings" on page 303](#)
- ["Tray Settings" on page 313](#)
- ["Panel Language" on page 314](#)


NOTE:

- The access to Admin Menu and Report / List can be limited with a password by enabling the Panel Lock. For more information, see ["Panel Lock Function" on page 315](#).

■ Report / List

Use Report / List to print various types of reports and lists.

NOTE:

- A password is required to enter the Report / List menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the  button.
- The reports and lists are all printed in English.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the information such as the printer name, serial number, and print volume.

For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, network settings are also printed.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 50 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Demo Page

Purpose:
To print a test page.

Protocol Monitor (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:
To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Address Book (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:
To print the list of all addresses stored as Address Book information.

Fax Activity (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:
To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

■ Meter Readings

Use Meter Readings to check the total number of printed pages.


Values:

Meter 1	Displays the total number of color prints.
Meter 2	Displays the total number of monochrome prints.
Meter 3	Always shows 0 on your printer.
Meter 4	Displays the total number of color and monochrome prints (Meter 1 + Meter 2).

■ Admin Menu

Use **Admin Menu** to configure a variety of printer features.

NOTE:

- A password is required to enter **Admin Menu** when **Panel Lock Set** is set to **Enable**. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the  button.

Phone Book (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Use the **Phone Book** menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

• Speed Dial

Purpose:

To store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

NOTE:

- The first eight entries are assigned to the one-touch buttons on the operator panel.

See also:

- ["Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 257](#)

• Group Dial

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a 2-digit dial code. Up to 6 group dial codes can be registered.

See also:

- ["Setting Group Dial" on page 259](#)

Network (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Use the **Network** menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the network.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Ethernet

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10base-T half-duplex.
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10base-T full-duplex.
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100base-TX half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100base-TX full-duplex.

NOTE:

- For the DocuPrint CM215 fw, this item is not displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

• Wireless Status (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:

To display the information on the wireless signal strength. No changes can be made on the operator panel to improve the status of the wireless connection.

Values:

Good	Indicates good signal strength.
Acceptable	Indicates marginal signal strength.
Low	Indicates insufficient signal strength.
No Reception	Indicates that no signal is received.

NOTE:

- This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

• **Wireless Setup (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)**

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface.

Values:

Select Access	Select the access point from the list. The access points are listed starting with the one in the best communication condition.	
	WEP Key Entry	When you select an access point using WEP as the security method, enter the WEP key. For 64bit keys, enter 10 hexadecimal characters. For 128bit keys, enter 26 hexadecimal characters.
	PassPhrase Entry	When you select an access point using WPA, WPA2, or Mixed as the encryption type, enter the passphrase of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters.

Manual Setup	Enter Network (SSID)	Specify a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.	
	Infrastructure	Select to configure the wireless settings through the access point such as a wireless router.	
		No Security	Select to configure the wireless settings with no encryption settings.
		Mixed Mode PSK	Select to configure the wireless settings with the Mixed Mode PSK encryption. Mixed Mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.
			PassPhrase Entry Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA-PSK-TKIP	Select to configure the wireless settings with the WPA-PSK-TKIP encryption.
			PassPhrase Entry Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless settings with the WPA2-PSK-AES encryption.
			PassPhrase Entry Specify the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WEP	Select to configure the wireless settings with the WEP encryption.
			WEP Key Entry Specify the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, enter 10 hexadecimal characters. For 128bit keys, enter 26 hexadecimal characters.
			Transmit Key Select a transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.
	Ad-hoc	Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.	
		No Security	Select to configure the wireless settings with no encryption settings.
		WEP	Select to configure the wireless settings with the WEP encryption.
			WEP Key Entry Specify the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, enter 10 hexadecimal characters. For 128bit keys, enter 26 hexadecimal characters.
		Transmit Key	Select a transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.

NOTE:

- This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

• WPS (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)


Purpose:

To configure wireless networks in accordance with the WPS standards.

Values:

Push Button Control	PBC Start No*	Disables the security method of WPS-PBC.
	Yes	Configures the wireless setting with the security method of WPS-PBC.
PIN Code	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.
	Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when you enter the PIN code to your computer.

NOTE:

- Instead of selecting Push Button Control, you can also start WPS-PBC by pressing and holding the  (WPS) button.
- WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed Mode PSK, WPA-PSK-AES, WPA2-PSK-AES, WPA-PSK-TKIP, Open (No Security)
- This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

• Reset Wireless (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their factory default values.

Values:

No*	Does not reset the wireless setting.
Yes	Resets the wireless setting.

NOTE:

- This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

• TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

IP Mode	Dual Stack*		Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
	IPv4		Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
IPv4	Get IP Address	DHCP/AutoIP*	Automatically sets the IP address.
		BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
		RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
		DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
		Panel	Enables the IP address entered on the operator panel.
	IP Address		Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.
	Subnet Mask		Manually sets the subnet mask.
	Gateway Address		Manually sets the gateway address.

NOTE:

- When you set an IP address in IPv6 mode, use the CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

• Protocol

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

LPD	Disable	Disables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the LPD port.
Port 9100	Disable	Disables the Port 9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port 9100 port.
WSD	Disable	Disables the Web Services on Devices (WSD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the WSD port.
SNMP	Disable	Disables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the SNMP UDP port.
StatusMessenger	Disable	Disables the StatusMessenger feature.
	Enable*	Enables the StatusMessenger feature.
Internet Services	Disable	Disables an access to the CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to the CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
Bonjour (mDNS)	Disable	Disables the Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables the Bonjour (mDNS).

• IP Filter

NOTE:

- The IP Filter feature is supported for IPv4 addresses and available only for `LPD` or `Port 9100`.

Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the network. You can set up to five IP addresses. To make any changes effective, turn off the printer and then turn it back on.

Values:

No. n/Address (n is 1 - 5.)		Sets the IP address for Filter n.
No. n/Mask (n is 1 - 5.)		Sets the address mask for Filter n.
No. n/Mode (n is 1 - 5.)	Reject	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.
	Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.
	Off*	Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter n.

• Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in Non-Volatile Memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Values:

Yes
No*

• Wi-Fi (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:

To enable the wireless connection.

Values:

Off
On*

NOTE:

- This item is displayed only when the Ethernet cable is disconnected.
- When you use the USB connection and do not use the wireless connection, you need to disable `Wi-Fi`.

Fax Settings (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Use the **Fax Settings** menu to configure the basic fax settings.

NOTE:


- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Ans Select

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the remote receive code, or setting OnHook to On (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), pressing the  (Start) button, and then selecting Manual Receive .
FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Ans. TEL/FAX , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
ANS/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your region, this mode is not supported.
DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

• Auto Answer Fax

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.

• Auto Ans. TEL/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is six seconds.

• Auto Ans. ANS/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.

• Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Min	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
Middle*	
Max	

• Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Ans Select` is set to `TEL/FAX Mode`.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Min	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
Middle	
Max*	

• Line Type

Purpose:

To select the line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Sets the line type to PSTN.
PBX	Sets the line type to PBX.

• Dialing Type

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone*	Sets the dialing type to Tone.
DP (10pps)	Sets the dialing type to Dial Pulse (10 pulse per second).
DP (20pps)	Sets the dialing type to Dial Pulse (20 pulse per second).

NOTE:

- The available values differ depending on your `Region` setting.

• Interval Timer

Purpose:

To specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is eight seconds.

• Number of Redial

Purpose:

To specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 9. If you enter **0**, the printer will not redial. The default is 3.

• Redial Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes. The default is one minute.

• Junk Fax Filter

Purpose:

To reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Address Book.

Values:

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

NOTE:

- Be sure to register the fax numbers you want to accept faxes from in the Address Book before using **Junk Fax Filter**.

• Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.

• Remote Rcv Tone

Purpose:

To specify the remote receive code in two digits to start **Remote Receive**.

• Send Header

Purpose:

To print the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the information of sender on the header of faxes.

• Company Name

Purpose:

To set the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.

• Your Fax Number

Purpose:

To set the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.

• Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:





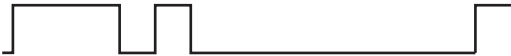


Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

• **DRPD Pattern**

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1-7	<p>DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:</p> <p>Pattern1 </p> <p>Pattern2 </p> <p>Pattern3 </p> <p>Pattern4 </p> <p>Pattern5 </p> <p>Pattern6 </p> <p>Pattern7 </p> <p>Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400ms, stops for 800ms, rings for 400ms and stops for 1400ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.</p>
------------	--

• Forward Settings

Purpose:

To specify whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Values:

Off*	Incoming faxes will not be forwarded.
Forward Only	Incoming faxes will be forwarded to a specified destination.
Forward and Print	Incoming faxes will be forwarded to a specified destination by Fax and printed.
E-Mail and Print	Incoming faxes will be sent with an e-mail to a specified destination by E-mail and printed.
Forward to Server	Incoming faxes will be forwarded to a server specified on the CentreWare Internet Services.
Fwd to Server and Print	Incoming faxes will be forward to a server specified on the CentreWare Internet Services and printed.

• Fax Fwd Number

Purpose:

To enter the fax number of the destination to where incoming faxes will be forwarded.

• Fax Fwd E-Mail

Purpose:

To enter the e-mail address to where incoming faxes will be sent with an e-mail.

• Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.

• Prefix Dial Num

Purpose:

To set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

• Discard Size

Purpose:

To set whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.

Values:

Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess at the bottom of a fax page.
Auto Reduction*	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the output paper.

• ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disable the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

• Extel Hook Thresh

Purpose:

To select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.

Values:

Lower	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Lower.
Normal*	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Normal.
Higher	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Higher.

• Modem Speed

Purpose:

To specify the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps*

• Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report.

• Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

• Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

• Region

Purpose:

To select the region where the printer is used.

System Settings

Use the `System Settings` menu to configure a variety of printer features.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Power Saver Timer


Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to the Power Saver mode.

Values:

Low Power Timer	5min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the Low Power mode after it finishes a job.
	5-30min	
Sleep Timer	6min*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the Sleep mode after it goes into the Low Power mode.
	1-6min	

Select 5min (default) for `Low Power Timer` if your printer shares an electrical circuit with your room lights and you notice them flickering. Otherwise, select a high value to keep your printer available for frequent use with the minimum warm-up time.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the Power Saver mode when it receives data from the computer. In the Low Power mode, you can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel. In the Sleep mode, you can return the printer to the standby mode by pressing the  (**Energy Saver**) button.

• Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for copying, scanning, or faxing to the defaults and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

Values:

45sec*
1min
2min
3min
4min

• Fault Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally. The job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On	60sec*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it cancels for jobs that stop abnormally.
	3-300sec	

• Job Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On	60sec*	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	5-300sec	

• Clock Settings

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Set Date		Specifies the current date.
Set Time		Specifies the current time.
Date Format	yy / mm / dd	Specifies the date format.
	mm / dd / yy	
	dd / mm / yy*	
Time Format	12H*	Specifies the time format.
	24H	
Time Zone		Specifies the time zone.

• Alert Tone

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
	Middle	
	Max	
Panel Alert Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Middle	
	Max	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume five seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Middle	
	Max	

Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job is complete.
	Middle*	
	Max	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Middle*	
	Max	
Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Min	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
	Middle*	
	Max	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Min	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Middle	
	Max	

• mm / inch

Purpose:

To specify the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters (mm)*	Specifies the default measurement unit.
Inches (")	

• Low Toner Alert Msg

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.

• Power On Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial settings for the printer.

See also:

- ["Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel" on page 52](#)

Values:

Yes	Performs the initial settings for the printer.
No*	Does not perform the initial settings for the printer.

Maintenance

Use the Maintenance menu for maintenance work including initialization of the NVM (non-volatile memory).

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• F/W Version

Purpose:

To display the version of the controller.

• Adjust Paper Type

Purpose:

To adjust the paper type.

Values:

Plain	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*
Labels	Lightweight
	Heavyweight*

• Adjust BTR

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller (BTR). To lower the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 - 3
Bond	0*
	-3 - 3
Light Card	0*
	-3 - 3
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-3 - 3
Labels	0*
	-3 - 3
Recycled	0*
	-3 - 3
Envelope	0*
	-3 - 3

• Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To lower the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

NOTE:

- The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*
	-3 - 3
Bond	0*
	-3 - 3
Light Card	0*
	-3 - 3
LW Gloss Card	0*
	-3 - 3
Labels	0*
	-3 - 3
Recycled	0*
	-3 - 3
Envelope	0*
	-3 - 3

• Auto Regi Adjust

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically adjust color registration.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically adjust color registration.
On*	Automatically adjusts color registration.

• Adjust ColorRegi

Purpose:

To automatically adjust color registration.

Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

NOTE:

- The Adjust ColorRegi feature can be configured when Auto Regi Adjust is set to Off.

Values:

Auto Adjust	Yes	Automatically corrects color registration.
	No*	Does not correct color registration automatically.

• Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Yes	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
No*	Does not stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

• Toner Refresh

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Yellow	Yes	Cleans the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
Magenta	Yes	Cleans the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan	Yes	Cleans the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
Black	Yes	Cleans the toner in the black toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

• BTR Refresh

Purpose:

Specify whether to execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
On	Automatically executes counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

• Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize NVM for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their factory default values. (Address Book is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

See also:

- ["Resetting to Factory Defaults" on page 319](#)

Values:

DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw:

User Fax Section	Yes	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Yes	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
System Section	Yes	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

DocuPrint CM215 b:

System Section	Yes	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

• Non-Genuine Mode

Purpose:

To use toner cartridges of another manufacturer.

NOTE:

- Using non-genuine toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Fuji Xerox recommends only new Fuji Xerox brand toner cartridges for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using consumables not supplied by Fuji Xerox.
- Before you use toner cartridges of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Values:

Off*	Does not use toner cartridges of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridges of another manufacturer.

• Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure.

Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

NOTE:

- An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality or incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0m*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

• Machine Life


Purpose:

To specify whether to continue print operations when the printer comes to the end of its service life.

Values:

Stop Print*	Stops print operations at the end of service life.
Continue Print	Continues print operations after the end of service life.

NOTE:

- When the printer no longer operates showing the error code 191-310 on the LCD panel, press the  (Back) button and the ▼ button at the same time and change the Machine Life setting to Continue Print. Then, you can keep using the printer.
- Although you can keep using the printer after the end of its service life by changing the setting to Continue Print, the printing quality is not guaranteed.

Secure Settings

Use the Secure Settings menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• **Panel Lock**

Purpose:

To restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.

See also:

- ["Panel Lock Function" on page 315](#)

NOTE:

- For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, you can select Disable for Panel Lock Set when all items under Service Lock are set to Unlocked and Secure Receive Set is set to Disable.
- For the DocuPrint CM215 b, you can select Disable for Panel Lock Set when all items under Service Lock are set to Unlocked.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Disable*	Does not restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.
	Enable	Restricts access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.
Change Password	0000*-9999	Sets or changes the password required to access Admin Menu and Report / List.

• Service Lock

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable each of the printer services or to require a password to use the services, and to set or change the password.

See also:

- ["Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 317](#)

NOTE:

- You can access to the items under `Service Lock` only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Values:

Copy	Unlocked*	Enables the Copy service.
	Locked	Disables the Copy service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Copy service, but requires a password.
	Color Pass. Locked	Enables the Copy service with a color mode, but requires a password.
FAX (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	Unlocked*	Enables the FAX service.
	Locked	Disables the FAX service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
	Password Locked	Enables the FAX services, but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
Scan	Unlocked*	Enables the Scan service.
	Locked	Disables the Scan service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Scan service, but requires a password.
Change Password	0000*-9999	Sets or changes the password required to use the Copy, FAX, Scan services.

• Secure Receive (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a password to print incoming faxes, and to set or change the password. When `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

NOTE:

- You can access to the items under `Secure Receive` only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Disable*	Does not require a password to print incoming faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to print incoming faxes.
Change Password	0000*-9999	Sets or changes the password required to print incoming faxes.

• Software Download

Purpose:

To specify whether to allow downloading firmware updates.

Values:

Disable	Disables downloading of firmware updates.
Enable*	Enables downloading of firmware updates.

Scan to E-Mail (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Use the `Scan to E-Mail` menu to edit the transmission source.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Edit From Field

Purpose:

To enable or disable editing of the transmission source.

Values:

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

USB Settings

Use the `USB Settings` menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Port Status

Purpose:

To enable or disable the USB interface.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB interface.
Enable*	Enables the USB interface.

■ Defaults Settings

Use the Defaults Settings menu to configure the default copy, scan, and fax settings of the printer. (The fax feature is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)

Copy Defaults

Use the Copy Defaults menus to configure a variety of copy features.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• **Color**

Purpose:

To set whether to make copies in color or in black and white.

Values:

Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Color*	Prints in color mode.

• **Collated**

Purpose:

To sort the copy job.

Values:

Off*	Does not sort the copy job.
On	Sorts the copy job.
Auto (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	Sorts the copy job if multiple-sheet documents are scanned with the ADF.

• Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To set the default value for copy reduction/enlargement ratio.

Values:

mm systems

200%
A5→A4 (141%)
A5→B5 (122%)
100%*
B5→A5 (81%)
A4→A5 (70%)
50%

inch systems

200%
Stmt→Lgl (154%)
Stmt→Ltr (129%)
100%*
Lgl→Ltr (78%)
Ldgr→Ltr (64%)
50%

NOTE:

- You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the ► button to enlarge the zoom ratio or press the ◀ button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.
- This item is available only when N-Up is set to Off or Manual.

• Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 × 297mm)*
A5 (148 × 210mm)
B5 (182 × 257mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13")
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)
Legal (8.5 × 14")
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)
Executive (7.25 × 10.5")

• Original Type

Purpose:

To select the copy image quality.

Values:

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Mixed*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

• Lighten/Darken

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

• Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

• Color Balance R

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of red within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

• Color Balance G

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of green within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

• Color Balance B

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of blue within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

• Gray Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default gray balance level within the range of -2 to +2. The factory default menu setting is 0.

NOTE:

- This option is effective only for black and white copying.

• N-Up

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform N-Up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Card Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

• Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

4mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

4mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• Paper Error

Purpose:

To specify whether to display a paper error when the size of print media loaded in the printer is different from the setting specified on the operator panel.

Values:

Off*	Does not display a paper error.
On	Displays a paper error.

Scan Defaults

Use the Scan Defaults menus to configure a variety of scanner features.

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• Scan to Network (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or on a computer.

Values:

Computer (Network) *	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server (FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.

• File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
TIFF
JPEG

• Color

Purpose:

To set the color mode.

Values:

Black & White	Scans in black and white mode. This is available only when File Format is set to PDF or TIFF.
Color*	Scans in color mode.

• Color Button Set

Purpose:

To assign color mode to the **Color Mode** button.

Values:

B&W Button	Black & White*	Scans in black and white when Black & White is selected for a color mode.
	Grayscale	Scans in gray scale when Black & White is selected for a color mode.
Color Button	Color*	Scans in color when Color is selected for a color mode.
	Color (Photo)	Scans in color (photo) when Color is selected for a color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.

• Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the default scan resolution.

Values:

200 × 200dpi*
300 × 300dpi
400 × 400dpi
600 × 600dpi

• Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 × 297mm)*
A5 (148 × 210mm)
B5 (182 × 257mm)
Letter (8.5 × 11")
Folio (8.5 × 13") (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)
Legal (8.5 × 14") (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)
Executive (7.25 × 10.5")

• Lighten/Darken

Purpose:

To set the default scan density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard type or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
Softest	

• Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

• Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

2mm*/0.1 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

2mm*/0.1 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
0-50mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

• TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6
TTN2*

• Image Compression

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

High	Sets the image compression level to High.
Medium*	Sets the image compression level to Medium.
Low	Sets the image compression level to Low.

• Max E-Mail Size (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

Fax Defaults (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Use the Fax Defaults menus to configure a variety of fax features.

NOTE:

- The Fax service cannot be used unless you set up a region code under Region. If Region is not set up, a message Set The Region Code appears on the LCD panel.
- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

• **Resolution**

Purpose:

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution. See the notes below.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE:

- Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

• **Original Type**

Purpose:

To select the default document type.

Values:

Text*	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

• **Lighten/Darken**

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighten2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darken1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken2	

• **Delayed Start**

Purpose:

This feature enables you to set a specific time for the fax transmission to start. Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Values:

21:00*/PM9:00*	Specify the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
0:00 - 23:59 / AM/PM1:00	
- 12:59	

NOTE:

- A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in this printer.

■ Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder (MPF).

MPF

NOTE:

- Asterisk (*) is the factory default setting.

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size loaded in the MPF.

Values:

Paper Size	A4 (210 × 297mm)*			
	A5 (148 × 210mm)			
	B5 (182 × 257mm)			
	Letter (8.5 × 11")			
	Folio (8.5 × 13")			
	Legal (8.5 × 14")			
	Executive (7.25 × 10.5")			
	Envelope #10 (4.1×9.5")			
	Monarch Env. (3.9×7.5")			
	Monarch Env. L (7.5×3.9")			
	DL Env. (110×220mm)			
	DL Env. L (220×110mm)			
	C5 Envelope (162 × 229mm)			
	Custom Size	Portrait (Y)	297mm*/11.7inch* 127 - 355mm/5.0-14.0inch	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
		Landscape (X)	210mm*/8.3inch* 77 - 215mm/3.0-8.5inch	
Paper Type	Plain*			
	Bond			
	Light Card			
	LW Gloss Card			
	Labels			
	Recycled			
	Envelope			
	Plain S2			
	Bond S2			
	Light Card S2			
	LW Gloss Card S2			
	Recycled S2			

Display Screen	Off	Does not display a screen.
	On*	Displays a screen that prompts the user to set Paper Size and Paper Type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.

NOTE:

- For more information on supported paper sizes, see ["Usable Print Media" on page 131](#).

■ Panel Language

Purpose:

To specify the language to be used on the operator panel.

See also:

- ["Adjusting the Language" on page 166](#)

Values:

English
繁體中文
简体中文
한국어







Panel Lock Function

When your printer is configured as a network printer available to a number of users, the access to Admin Menu and Report / List can be limited by enabling the Panel Lock. This prevents unauthorized users from changing the settings made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the print driver.

This section includes:

- ["Enabling the Panel Lock" on page 315](#)
- ["Changing the Panel Lock Password" on page 315](#)
- ["Disabling the Panel Lock" on page 316](#)

■ Enabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select Admin Menu, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select Secure Settings, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select Panel Lock, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select Panel Lock Set, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select Enable, and then press the  button.
- 7 As necessary, select Change Password, and change the password using the numeric keypad. Then, press the  button.







NOTE:

- The factory-default panel password is 0000.

NOTE:

- Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password. However, for the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, the settings for the Address Book would be cleared.
 - 1 Turn off the printer.
 - 2 Turn on the printer with holding the **System** button.







■ Changing the Panel Lock Password

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select Admin Menu, and then press the  button.
- 3 Enter the current password, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select Secure Settings, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select Panel Lock, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select Change Password, and then press the  button.
- 7 Enter a new password, and then press the  button.

■ Disabling the Panel Lock

NOTE:

- For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, you can select **Disable** for **Panel Lock Set** when all items under **Service Lock** are set to **Unlocked** and **Secure Receive Set** is set to **Disable**.
- For the DocuPrint CM215 b, you can select **Disable** for **Panel Lock Set** when all items under **Service Lock** are set to **Unlocked**.







- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Enter the password, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **Secure Settings**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select **Panel Lock**, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select **Panel Lock Set**, and then press the  button.
- 7 Select **Disable**, and then press the  button.

Limiting Access to Printer Operations

Enabling the Copy Lock, FAX Lock and Scan Lock options function which limits access to copy, fax and scan operations. (FAX Lock is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)





Taking Copy Lock as an example, the following procedure explains how to enable or disable the option.

Use the same procedure to enable or disable FAX Lock and Scan Lock.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Secure Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Panel Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Panel Lock Set`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select `Enable`, and then press the  button.
- 7 As necessary, select `Change Password`, and change the password using the numeric keypad. Then, press the  button.







NOTE:

- The default password is 0000.

- 8 Press the  (**Back**) button.
- 9 Select `Service Lock`, and then press the  button.
- 10 Select `Copy`, and then press the  button.
- 11 Select one of the following option, and then press the  button.
 - Unlocked
 - Locked
 - Password Locked
 - Color Pass. Locked (available only for Copy Lock)

Setting the Time for the Power Saver Mode

You can set the power saver timer for the printer. The printer switches to the Power Saver mode after the specified time.






- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `System Settings`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Power Saver Timer`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `Low Power Timer` or `Sleep Timer`, and then press the  button.
- 6 Press the ▼ or ▲ button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  button.
You can select from 5–30 minutes for `Low Power Timer` or 1–6 minutes for `Sleep Timer`.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

Resetting to Factory Defaults

After executing `Initialize NVM` and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their factory default values.

NOTE:

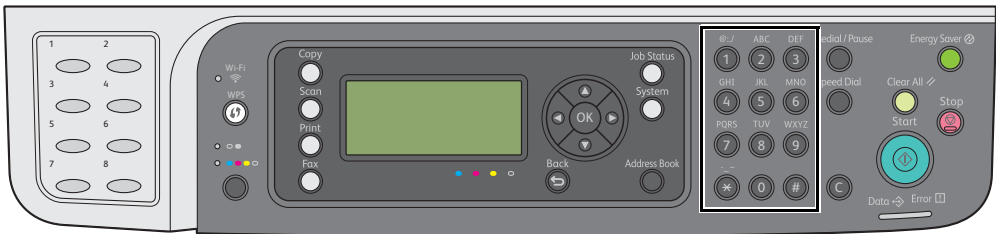
- The following procedure does not initialize the network settings.
 - For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, to initialize the wired network settings, refer to ["Initialize NVM" on page 282](#).
 - For the DocuPrint CM215 fw, to initialize the wireless network settings, refer to ["Reset Wireless \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 280](#).

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu`, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance`, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Initialize NVM`, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `System Section` to initialize the menu parameters, and then press the  button.
For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, select `User Fax Section` to initialize the Address Book data for fax, and select `User Scan Section` to initialize the Address Book data for e-mail.
- 6 Select `Yes`, and then press the  button.
The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Using the Numeric Keypad

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you enter the password, you enter four-digit number.

For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, you may also need to enter names. For example, when you set up your printer, you enter your name or your company name. When you store speed dial or group dial numbers, you need to enter the corresponding names.



■ Entering Characters (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

When prompted to enter a letter, press the each number key until the correct letter appears on the LCD panel.

For example, to enter the letter O, press **6**.

- Each time you press **6**, the display shows a different letter in sequence, m, n, o, M, N, O and finally 6.
- To enter additional letters, repeat the first step.
- Press the **OK** button when you are finished.

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
1	1 @ . _ - (space) \ & () ! " # \$ % ' ~ ^ ` ; : ? , + * / = [] { } < >
2	a b c A B C 2
3	d e f D E F 3
4	g h i G H I 4
5	j k l J K L 5
6	m n o M N O 6
7	p q r s P Q R S 7
8	t u v T U V 8
9	w x y z W X Y Z 9
0	0
*	- _ ~
#	(space) & ()

■ Deleting Numbers or Names

If an incorrect number or name is entered, press the **C (Clear)** button to delete the number or character, and then enter the correct number or character.

Troubleshooting

This chapter includes:

- ["Clearing Jams" on page 322](#)
- ["Basic Printer Problems" on page 335](#)
- ["Display Problem" on page 336](#)
- ["Printing Problems" on page 337](#)
- ["Print Quality Problems" on page 339](#)
- ["Copy Problem" on page 352](#)
- ["Copy Quality Problems" on page 353](#)
- ["Adjusting Color Registration" on page 354](#)
- ["Fax Problems \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 358](#)
- ["Scanning Problems" on page 360](#)
- ["Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems" on page 363](#)
- ["Wireless Problems \(DocuPrint CM215 fw Only\)" on page 364](#)
- ["Other Problem" on page 365](#)
- ["Understanding Printer Messages" on page 366](#)
- ["Contacting Service" on page 375](#)
- ["Getting Help" on page 376](#)
- ["Non-Genuine Mode" on page 378](#)

Clearing Jams

This section includes:

- ["Avoiding Jams" on page 322](#)
- ["Identifying the Location of Paper Jams" on page 323](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 324](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 328](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer" on page 329](#)
- ["Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray" on page 331](#)
- ["Jam Problems" on page 334](#)

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams.

See also:

- ["About Print Media" on page 128](#)
- ["Supported Print Media" on page 131](#)

NOTE:

- Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

■ Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. See ["About Print Media" on page 128](#) for more information.
- See ["Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder \(MPF\)" on page 134](#) and ["Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter \(PSI\)" on page 142](#) to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Make sure that the stacked print media does not exceed the maximum height indicated on the paper width guides.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the MPF or the PSI.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Make sure that the recommended print side is facing up when you insert the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. See ["Print Media Storage Guidelines" on page 130](#) for more information.
- Do not remove the PSI during a print job.
- Make sure that all cables connected to the printer are correctly inserted.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.

■ Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

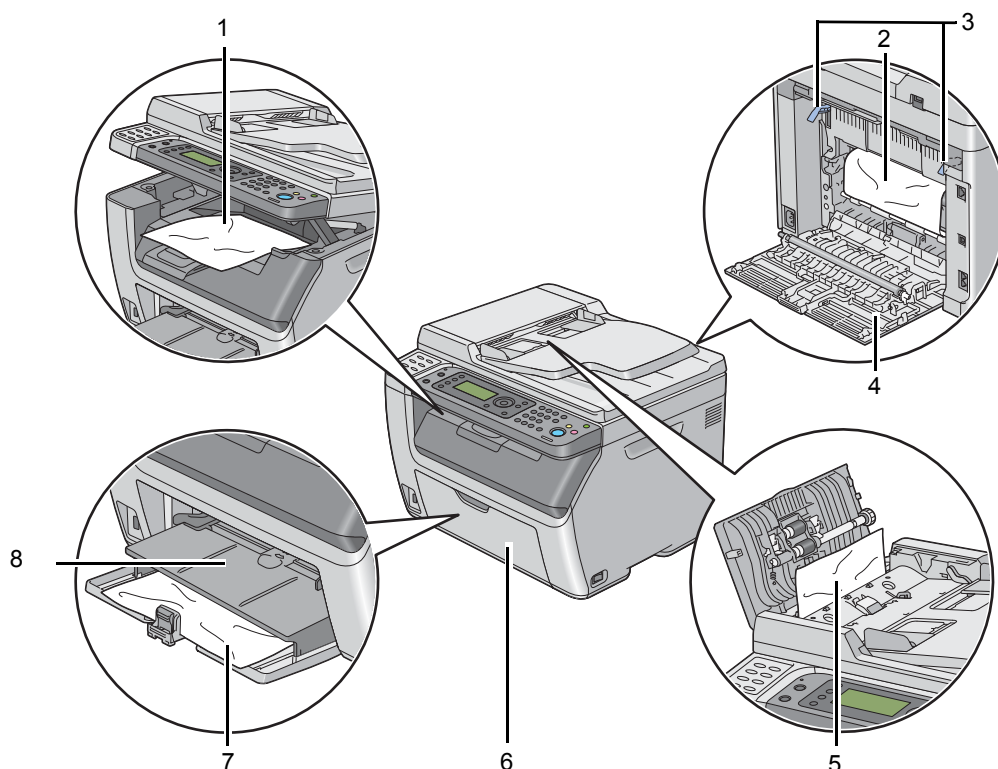
CAUTION:

- Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Center Output Tray |
| 2 | Transfer Belt |
| 3 | Levers |
| 4 | Rear Cover |
| 5 | ADF Cover (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only) |
| 6 | Front Cover |
| 7 | Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) |
| 8 | Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) |

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

When a document jams while it passes through the automatic document feeder (ADF), remove jams in the following procedure.

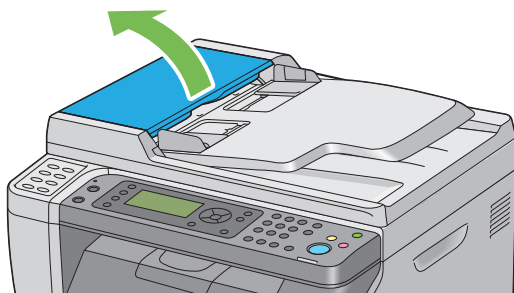
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

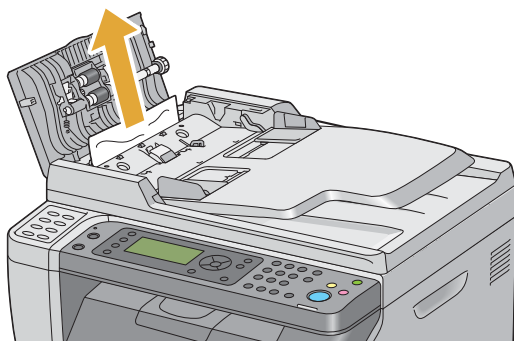
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

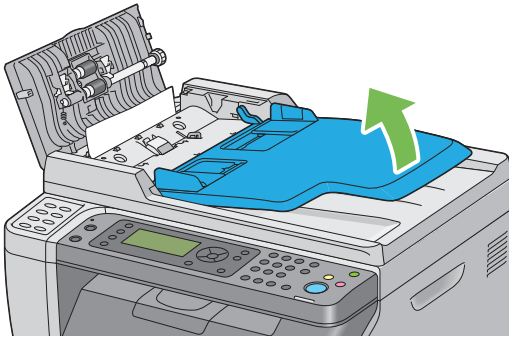
- 1 Open the ADF cover.



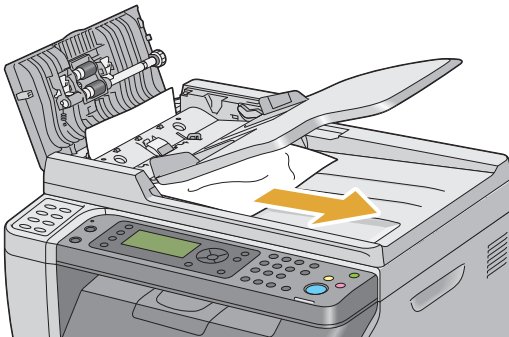
- 2 Remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



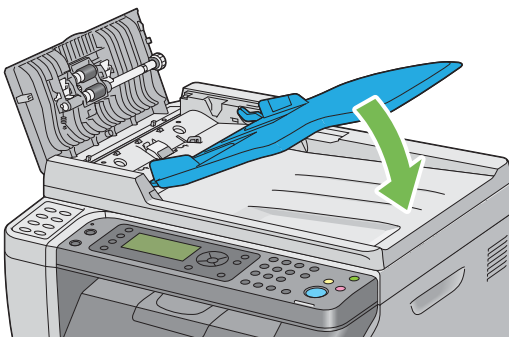
- 3** If you find it difficult to pull the document, open the document feeder tray.



- 4** Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.



- 5** Close the document feeder tray.



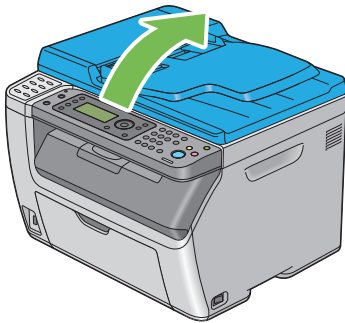
- 6 Close the ADF cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.



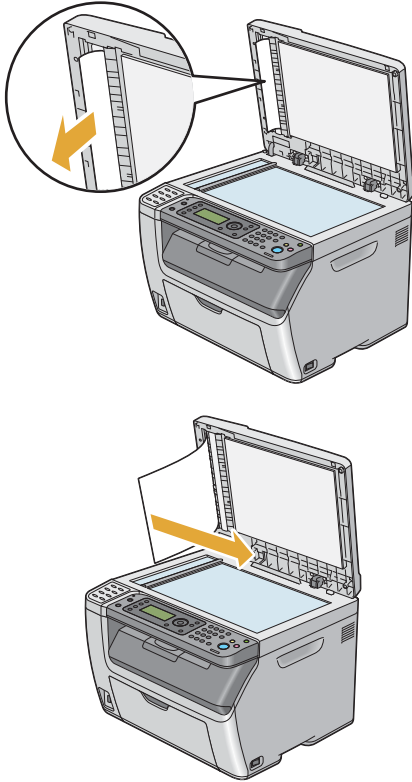
NOTE:

- Make sure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

- 7 If you cannot remove the jammed document from the document output tray or cannot find any jammed document there, open the document cover.



- 8 Remove the document from the ADF feed roller or the feed area by carefully pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.

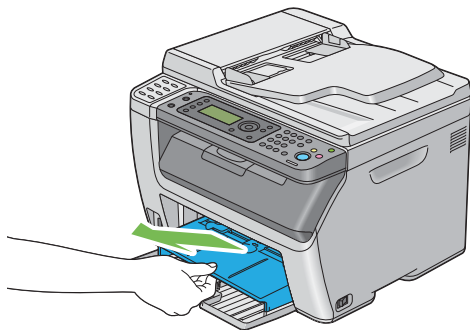


■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer

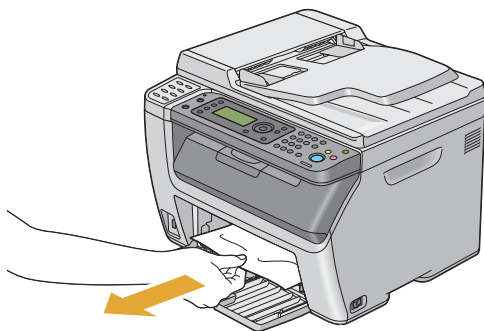
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

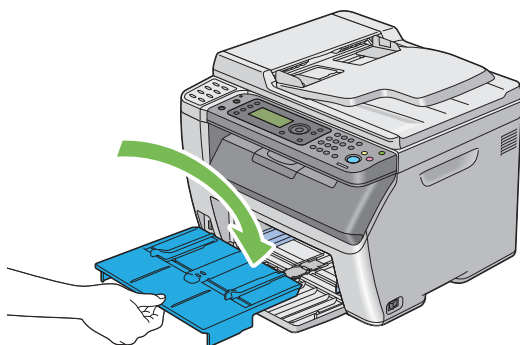
- 1 Pull the PSI out.



- 2 Remove any paper jammed from the front of the printer.



- 3 Replace the PSI in the printer.



IMPORTANT:

- Do not use excessive force on the PSI. Doing so could damage or the inside of the printer.

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer

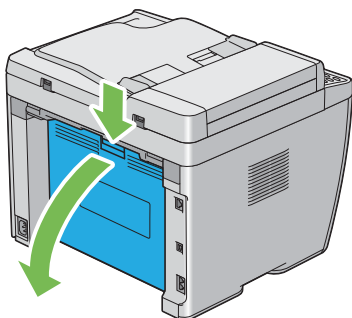
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

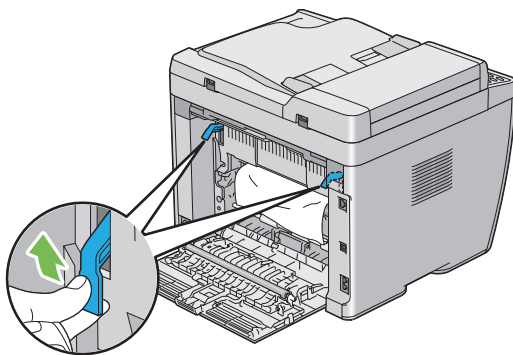
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

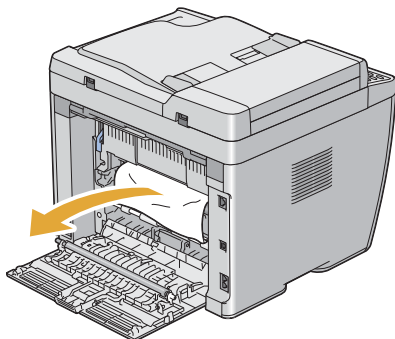
- 1 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



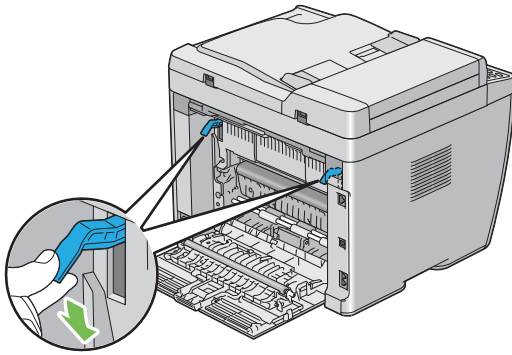
- 2 Lift up the levers.



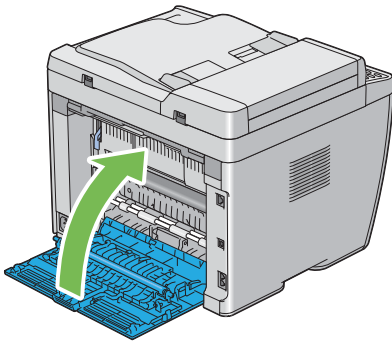
- 3 Remove any paper jammed from the rear of the printer by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



- 4 Lower the levers to their original position.



- 5 Close the rear cover.



■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray

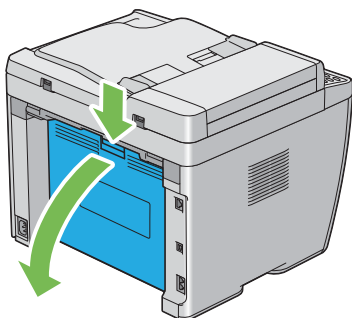
IMPORTANT:

- To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
- To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

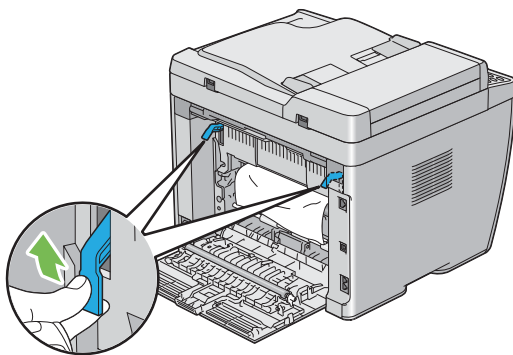
NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

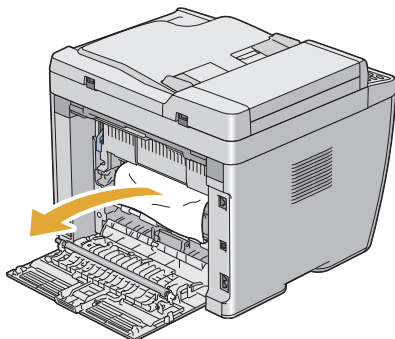
- 1 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



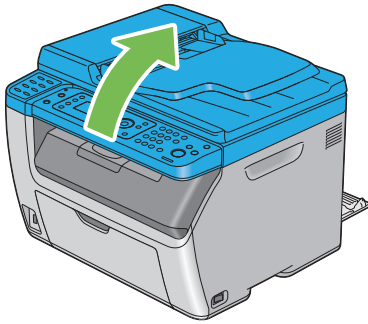
- 2 Lift up the levers.



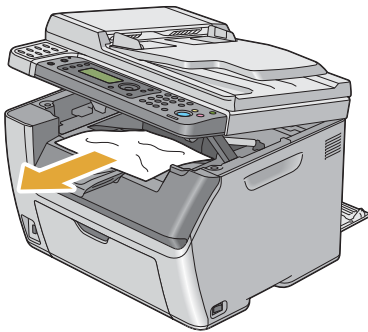
- 3 Remove any paper jammed from the rear of the printer by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



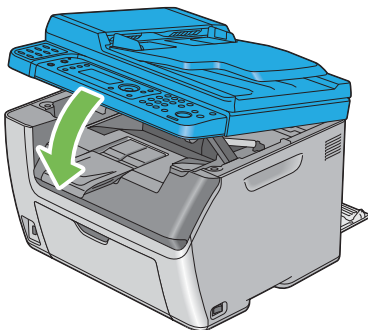
- 4 If no paper is found in the paper path, lift and open the scanner.



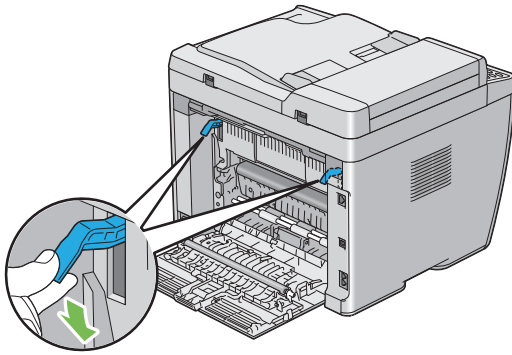
- 5 Remove any paper jammed out of the center output tray.



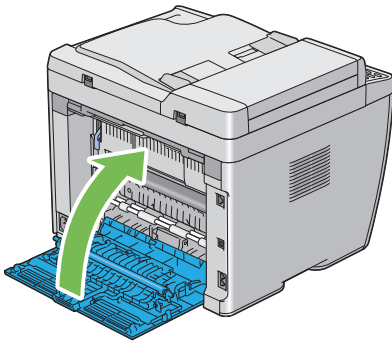
- 6 Lower and close the scanner.



- 7** Lower the levers to their original position.



- 8** Close the rear cover.



■ Jam Problems

Misfeed jam

Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur.	<p>Remove the paper from the PSI, and then make sure that the paper is properly inserted in the MPF.</p> <p>Depending on the print media you use, take any of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For thick paper, use the one that is 163 gsm or less.• For thin paper, use the one that is 60 gsm or more.• For the envelope, make sure that it is properly loaded in the MPF or the PSI as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 139 or in "Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 144. <p>If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope.</p> <p>If performing manual duplex printing, make sure that the print media is not curled.</p> <p>Fan the print media.</p> <p>If the print media is damp, turn over the print media.</p> <p>If the problem continues, use print media that is not damp.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Multi-feed jam

Problem	Action
Print media multiple feeds occur.	<p>Remove the paper from the PSI, and then make sure that the paper is inserted properly in the MPF.</p> <p>If the print media is damp, use print media that is not damp.</p> <p>Fan the print media.</p>
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only) A document jam occurs in the ADF if scanning of multiple-sheet document is cancelled while scanning is in progress.	<p>Clear the jam.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)" on page 324

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easy to resolve. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cord is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- For the DocuPrint CM215 fw, when connected to the computer with the Wireless connection, the Ethernet cable is not connected between the printer and the network.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

NOTE:

- If error messages are displayed on the LCD panel or on your computer screen, follow the on-screen instructions to resolve the printer problems. For details about error messages and error codes, see ["Understanding Printer Messages" on page 366](#).

Display Problem

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the print driver, or the printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel. Change the menu settings from the print driver or the printer utilities instead of the operator panel.

Printing Problems

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Confirm that the <code>Select Function</code> screen appears on the LCD panel before you send a job to print.
	Make sure that print media is loaded in the printer.
	Verify that you are using the correct print driver.
	Make sure that you are using the correct Ethernet or USB cable and that it is securely connected to the printer. (Ethernet connection is available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, check the interface of your printer from <code>Admin Menu</code> . Determine the host interface you are using. Print a System Settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct. Refer to "Printing a System Settings Page" on page 164 for details on how to print a System Settings page.
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	Make sure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer.
	See also: • "Usable Print Media" on page 131
	Fan the print media before loading it.
	Make sure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Make sure that the paper width guides and length guide are adjusted correctly.
	Make sure that the PSI is securely inserted.
	Do not overload the print media sources.
	Do not force print media into the PSI or the MPF when you load it. Otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Make sure that the print media is not curled.
	Load the recommended print side correctly for the type of print media you are using.
	See also: • "Loading Print Media" on page 133
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix print media sizes.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
	Load the print media source only when it is empty.
The envelope is creased after printing.	Make sure that the envelope is loaded as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 139 or "Loading Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 144 .

Problem	Action
Page breaks in unexpected places.	<p>Increase the value for Job Time-Out in the System Settings menu, that is on the Printer Maintenance tab in the Printer Setting Utility.</p> <p>For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, increase the time-out value for the protocol in use in the Protocol Settings menu on the CentreWare Internet Services.</p>
Print media does not stack neatly in the center output tray.	Turn the print media stack over in the PSI and MPF.
Printer does not print duplex pages.	<p>Select either of the duplex printing options (flip on short edge/flip on long edge) in the print driver.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Manual Duplex Printing" on page 147

Print Quality Problems

This section includes:

- ["The Output Is Too Light" on page 340](#)
- ["Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side" on page 341](#)
- ["Random Spots/Blurred Images" on page 342](#)
- ["The Entire Output Is Blank" on page 342](#)
- ["Streaks Appear on the Output" on page 343](#)
- ["Pitched Color Dots" on page 343](#)
- ["Vertical Blanks" on page 343](#)
- ["Mottle" on page 344](#)
- ["Ghosting" on page 345](#)
- ["Fog" on page 346](#)
- ["Bead-Carry-Out \(BCO\)" on page 346](#)
- ["Auger Mark" on page 347](#)
- ["Wrinkled/Stained Paper" on page 348](#)
- ["The Top Margin Is Incorrect" on page 349](#)
- ["Color Registration Is Out of Alignment" on page 350](#)
- ["Protrudent/Bumpy Paper" on page 351](#)

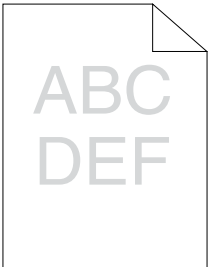
NOTE:

- In this section, some procedures use the Printer Setting Utility or the SimpleMonitor. Some procedures that use the Printer Setting Utility can also be performed using the operator panel.

See also:

- ["Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 274](#)
- ["Printer Setting Utility \(Windows Only\)" on page 58](#)
- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 59](#)

■ The Output Is Too Light

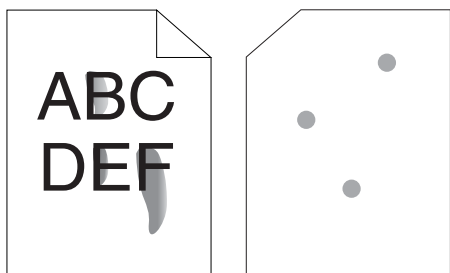


Problem	Action
The output is too light.	<p>The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Check the toner level in the Consumables tab in the Printer Status window of the SimpleMonitor.2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. <hr/> <p>Verify that the print media is dry and the correct print media is used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Usable Print Media" on page 131 <hr/> <p>Try changing the paper type setting in the print driver. The following procedure uses the Microsoft® Windows® print driver as an example.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting.2 Load dry (not damp) and correct size print media, and then click Print Test Page in the Properties window of the print driver. <hr/> <p>Disable the toner saving feature in the print driver.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Conserving Supplies" on page 401

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Toner Smears or Print Comes Off/Stain on Back Side

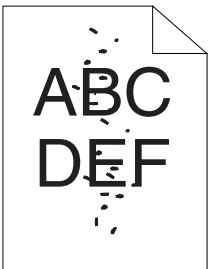


Problem	Action
Toner smears or print comes off. The output has stain on the back side.	<p>The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the paper type setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock. The following procedure uses the Windows print driver as an example.</p> <p>1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting.</p> <p>Verify that the correct print media is being used.</p> <p>If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Usable Print Media" on page 131 <p>Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit.</p> <p>1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab.</p> <p>2 Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media.</p> <p>3 Click the Apply New Settings button.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Random Spots/Blurred Images

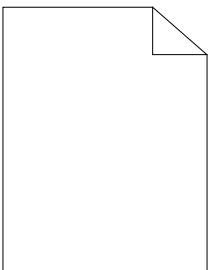


Problem	Action
The printed result has random spots or is blurred.	<p>Make sure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 393 <p>If you use non-genuine brand toner cartridges, install genuine brand toner cartridges.</p> <p>Clean up the fusing unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper.2 Load the printed sheet with the printed side facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.

NOTE:

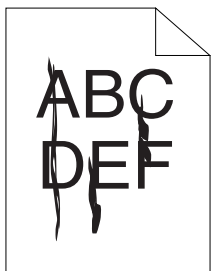
- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ The Entire Output Is Blank



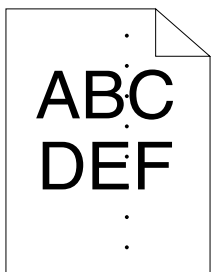
If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Streaks Appear on the Output



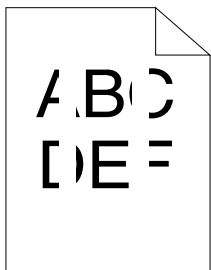
If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Pitched Color Dots



If this trouble happens, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Vertical Blanks



Problem	Action
The printed result has vertical blanks.	Clean inside the printer and perform a test print. 1 Clean inside the printer by using the print head cleaning rod. 2 Click Print Test Page in the Properties window of the print driver. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">"Cleaning Inside the Printer" on page 386

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

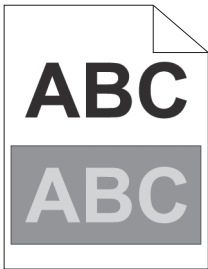
■ Mottle

Problem	Action
The printed result has mottled appearance.	<p>Adjust the transfer bias.</p> <p>1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust BTR on the Printer Maintenance tab.</p> <p>2 Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used.</p> <p>3 Click the Apply New Settings button.</p> <hr/> <p>If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Ghosting

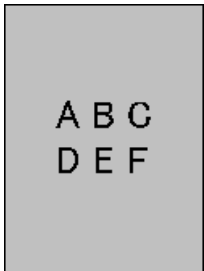


Problem	Action
The printed result has ghosting.	<p>Adjust the transfer bias.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Chart Print on the Diagnosis tab.2 Click the Ghost Configuration Chart button. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed.3 Click BTR Refresh Mode on the Printer Maintenance tab.4 Select the check box next to On, and then click the Apply New Settings button.5 Click Chart Print on the Diagnosis tab.6 Click the Ghost Configuration Chart button. The Ghost Configuration Chart is printed. <p>The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the paper type setting in the print driver. For example, change Plain to Lightweight Cardstock. The following procedure uses the Windows print driver as an example.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the print driver, change the Paper Type setting. <p>Adjust the temperature of the fusing unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab.2 Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media.3 Click the Apply New Settings button. <p>If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Fog

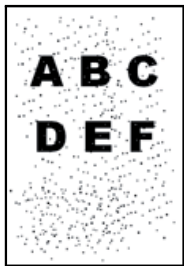


Problem	Action
The printed result is foggy.	When the whole is printed light, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
	When the printed page is partly light, start Clean Developer . 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab. 2 Click the Start button.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)

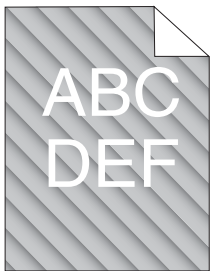


Problem	Action
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) is happening.	If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Adjust Altitude on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed. 3 Click the Apply New Settings button.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Auger Mark

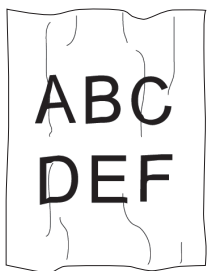


Problem	Action
The printed result has auger mark.	<p>The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.</p> <p>1 Check the toner level in the Consumables tab in the Printer Status window of the SimpleMonitor.</p> <p>2 Replace the toner cartridges as necessary.</p>
	<p>Start Clean Developer.</p> <p>1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab.</p> <p>2 Click the Start button.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Wrinkled/Stained Paper

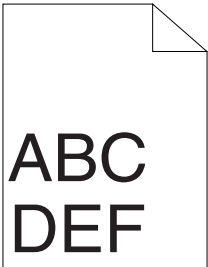


Problem	Action
The output is wrinkled. The output is stained.	Verify that the correct print media is being used. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If excessive wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Usable Print Media" on page 131• "About Print Media" on page 128
	If you use the envelope, check whether the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope. If the crease is within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope, this is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault. If not, take the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the envelope is Com 10, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the long edge, use a different size envelope.• If the envelope is C5, which is 220 mm or longer and has a flap on the short edge, load it in the MPF with the flap open and facing up.• If the envelope is Monarch or DL, which is shorter than 220 mm, load it long edge feed in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. If the problem continues, use a different size envelope.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ The Top Margin Is Incorrect

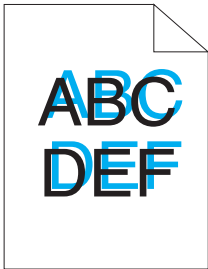


Problem	Action
The top margin is incorrect.	Make sure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used.

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Color Registration Is Out of Alignment

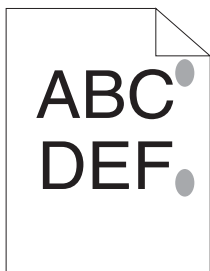


Problem	Action
Color registration is out of alignment.	Execute an auto color registration adjustment. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Deselect the check box next to On . 3 Click the Start button next to Auto Correct .
	Clean the CTD sensor. 1 Clean the CTD sensor. 2 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. 3 Deselect the check box next to On . 4 Click the Start button next to Auto Correct .
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 389
	Print the color registration chart and manually correct the color registration. 1 Launch the Printer Setting Utility, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. 2 Deselect the check box next to On . 3 Click the Start button next to Print Color Regi Chart . The color registration chart is printed. 4 Check the values with the straight lines on the chart. 5 Select the value for each color on the Printer Setting Utility. 6 Click the Apply New Settings button. 7 Click the Start button next to Print Color Regi Chart to print the color registration chart again. 8 Adjust until all straight lines are at the value of 0.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 354

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

■ Protrudent/Bumpy Paper



Problem	Action
Printed surface got protrudent/bumpy.	<p>Clean up the fusing unit.</p> <p>1 Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over the paper.</p> <p>2 Load the printed sheet with the printed side facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.</p>

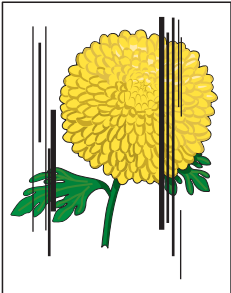
NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only) A document loaded in the ADF cannot be copied.	Make sure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.

Copy Quality Problems

Problem	Action
<p>(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)</p> <p>There are lines or streaks in copies made from the ADF.</p> 	<p>There is debris on the ADF glass. When scanning, the paper from the ADF passes over the debris creating lines or streaks.</p> <p>Clean the ADF glass with a lint free cloth.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 383
<p>There are spots in copies taken from the document glass.</p>	<p>There is debris on the document glass. When scanning, the debris creates a spot on the image.</p> <p>Clean the document glass with a lint free cloth.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 383
<p>The reverse side of the original is showing on the copy.</p>	<p>On the Copy menu, enable <code>Auto Exposure</code>.</p> <p>For information on turning <code>Auto Exposure</code> on and off, see "Auto Exposure" on page 184.</p>
<p>Light colors are washed out or white on the copy.</p>	<p>On the Copy menu, disable <code>Auto Exposure</code>.</p> <p>For information on turning <code>Auto Exposure</code> on and off, see "Auto Exposure" on page 184.</p>
<p>Image is too light or dark.</p>	<p>Use the <code>Lighten/Darken</code> option on the Copy menu.</p> <p>For information on making the image lighter or darker, see "Lighten/Darken" on page 182.</p>

NOTE:

- If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

Adjusting Color Registration

This section describes how to adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location.






This section includes:

- ["Performing Auto Correct" on page 354](#)
- ["Printing the Color Registration Chart" on page 355](#)
- ["Determining Values" on page 356](#)
- ["Entering Values" on page 357](#)

■ Performing Auto Correct

Auto Correct allows you to correct the color registration automatically.

Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select **Admin Menu**, and then press the  button.
- 3 Select **Maintenance**, and then press the  button.
- 4 Select **Adjust ColorRegi**, and then press the  button.
- 5 Select **Auto Adjust**, and then press the  button.
- 6 Select **Yes**, and then press the  button.
Auto Correct is performed.

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.
- 4 Deselect the check box next to **On**.
- 5 Click the **Start** button next to **Auto Correct**.
The color registration is corrected automatically.

■ Printing the Color Registration Chart

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.
- 4 Deselect the check box next to **On**.
- 5 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.
The color registration chart is printed.

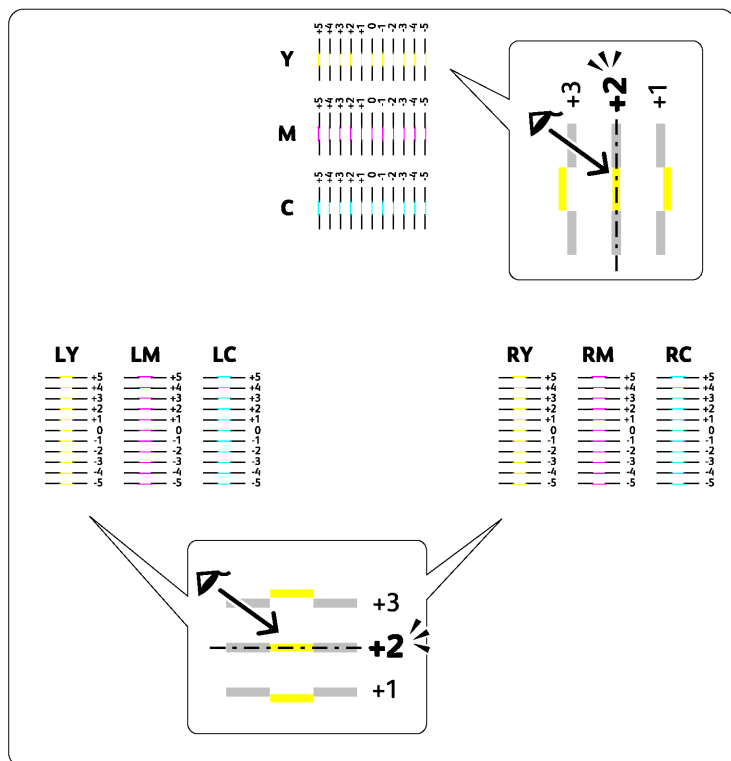
■ Determining Values

On the color registration chart printed, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (Y, M, and C).

If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-5 – +5) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration.

When the value is not 0, enter the value according to the procedure in ["Entering Values" on page 357](#).



■ Entering Values

Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

Using the Printer Setting Utility, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Registration Adjustment** page is displayed.
- 4 Deselect the check box next to **On**.
- 5 Select the value you checked in the color registration chart, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.
- 6 Click the **Start** button next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.
The color registration chart is printed with the new values.
- 7 Adjust until all straight lines are at the value of 0. Viewing the images before and after will help.

IMPORTANT:

- After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

Fax Problems (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again. Make sure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See also: • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236 Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Make sure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly. Print the Address Book List.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Make sure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin. Make sure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	Select FAX Mode for Ans Select . Make sure that there is paper in the PSI or the MPF. Check if the LCD panel shows Memory Full . Check the Junk Fax Filter setting.
The printer does not send faxes.	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor-quality.	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and resend the fax. A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Ask the sender to resend the fax. Check your printer by making a copy. The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. See also: • "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 390
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam. Ask the sender to clear the document jam and resend the fax.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check your ADF glass for marks and clean it. See also: • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 383
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Ask the sender to sort out the problem and retry.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the LCD panel shows Memory Full , delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.

Problem	Action
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	<p>You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. Correct the paper settings.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Tray Settings" on page 313
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	<p>Check if the region is set correctly.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Press the System button. 2 Select Admin Menu, and then press the OK button. 3 Select Fax Settings, and then press the OK button. 4 Select Region, and then press the OK button. 5 When the setting is correct, press the ↩ (Back) button to return to the previous screen. <p>To change the setting, select the correct region and then press the OK button. Select Yes to reboot the printer.</p> <p>Check that the phone line is connected properly.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	<p>Reduce the modem speed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Press the System button. 2 Select Admin Menu, and then press the OK button. 3 Select Fax Settings, and then press the OK button. 4 Select Modem Speed, and then press the OK button. 5 Select the desired menu item, and then press the OK button.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	<p>Make sure that you place the document to be scanned facing down on the document glass, or facing up in the ADF. (ADF is available only for the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)</p> <p>There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Preview function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.</p> <p>Check that the Ethernet or USB cable is connected properly.</p> <p>Make sure that the Ethernet or USB cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.</p> <p>Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.</p>
The printer scans very slowly.	<p>For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.</p> <p>Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.</p> <p>Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.</p>
<p>(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)</p> <p>Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the ADF.</p>	<p>Make sure that the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Preparing a Document" on page 171 • "Making Copies From the ADF (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)" on page 174 <p>Check whether the document is properly loaded in the ADF.</p> <p>Make sure that the document guides are adjusted properly.</p> <p>Make sure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the ADF.</p> <p>Make sure that the document is not curled.</p> <p>Fan the document well before loading it in the ADF.</p>
<p>(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)</p> <p>Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the ADF.</p>	<p>Clean the ADF glass.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 383
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	<p>Clean the document glass.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 383
Images are skewed.	<p>Make sure that you place the document to be scanned facing down on the document glass, or facing up in the ADF. (ADF is available only for DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.)</p>

Problem	Action
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only) Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the ADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only) The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the Scan to E-Mail or Scan to Network feature.	<p>Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the CentreWare Internet Services.</p> <p>Scan to E-Mail</p> <p>Check the following setting under Address Book → Personal Address:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Address <p>Scan to Network</p> <p>Check the following settings under Address Book → Computer/Server Address Book:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name (Displayed on Printer) • Network Type • Host Address (IP Address or DNS Name) • Port Number • Login Name (if required by host) • Login Password • Name of Shared Directory • Subdirectory Path (optional)
Cannot scan using Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) on a Windows Server® 2003 computer.	<p>Enable WIA on the computer.</p> <p>To enable WIA:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Services. 2 Right-click Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), and then click Properties to make sure that Startup type is set to Manual or Automatic. 3 Click OK. 4 Right-click Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), and then click Start.

Problem	Action
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows Server 2012 computer.	<p>Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer.</p> <p>To install Desktop Experience:</p> <p>For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Server Manager. 2 Under Features Summary, click Add Features. 3 Select the Desktop Experience check box. 4 If a window appears, follow the on-screen instructions. 5 Click Next, and then click Install. 6 Restart the computer. <p>For Windows Server 2012:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 On the Start screen, click Server Manager. 2 Click Add roles and features to start Add Roles and Features Wizard. 3 On the Before you begin screen, click Next. 4 On the Select installation type screen, confirm that Role-based or feature-based installation is selected, and then click Next. 5 On the Select destination server screen, select an appropriate server and then click Next. 6 On the Select server roles screen, click Next. 7 On the Select features screen, select the Desktop Experience check box under User Interfaces and Infrastructure (Installed) in the Features list. 8 On the pop-up window, click Add Features. 9 On the Select features screen, click Next. 10 On the Confirm installation selections screen, click Install. 11 Restart the computer.

Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw only)	Make sure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable or Ethernet cable.
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Make sure that the printer is turned on. Make sure that the print driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the print driver.)
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Make sure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable. Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again. If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scan driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from the Express Scan Manager.	Install the scan driver. If the driver is already installed, uninstall it and then reinstall it.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via the Express Scan Manager.	Make sure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable. Check whether the printer is turned on. If the printer is turned on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again. If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
Failed to create an image file via the Express Scan Manager.	Make sure that there is sufficient space in your hard disk. Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to initialize the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to execute the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
An unexpected error occurred on the Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall the Express Scan Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.

Wireless Problems (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)

Problem	Action
Cannot setup wireless connection.	<p>Make sure that the Ethernet cable is disconnected from the printer.</p> <p>Make sure that Wi-Fi is set to On.</p> <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Wi-Fi (DocuPrint CM215 fw Only)" on page 282 <p>Try disabling the firewall on your computer. The firewall on your computer may be blocking communication with your printer.</p>
Cannot setup wireless connection with WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup®).	Make sure that the security setting of the wireless LAN access point or router is WPA or WPA2. (WEP is not supported on WPS.)
Cannot setup wireless connection with the WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration).	Press the WPS button on the wireless LAN access point or router within two minutes after starting the WPS operation on the printer. For details about the wireless LAN access point or router, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point or router.
Cannot setup wireless connection with WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number).	Check if the PIN you have entered on the computer is correct.

Other Problem










Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.

Understanding Printer Messages





















The printer LCD panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This section describes error codes included in the messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.
















IMPORTANT:











- When an error message is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.

Error Code	What You Can Do
005-121	Open the ADF cover. Remove the jammed paper and then close the ADF cover.
005-301	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">"Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)" on page 324
009-950	Replace the specified toner cartridge.
009-951	See also:
009-952	<ul style="list-style-type: none">"Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 390
009-953	
010-397	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
016-315	
016-317	See also:
016-372	<ul style="list-style-type: none">"Online Services" on page 409
016-501	
016-502	
016-503	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server setting is correct by contacting your server administrator.
016-504	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the user name and password for the POP3 server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-506	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the SMTP server address and e-mail destination are set correctly.
016-507	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the user name and password used for the SMTP server are set correctly by contacting your server administrator.
016-718	Press the  button to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-719	Press the  button to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-720	
016-744	Press the  button to clear the message. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
016-745	
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">"Online Services" on page 409
016-749	Press the  button to cancel the current job. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
016-764	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.






Error Code	What You Can Do
016-766	Press the OK button to clear the message. Ping the IP address of the SMTP server and check if the server is available. If this does not solve the problem, contact SMTP server administrator.
016-767	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the recipient address is correct, and try scanning again.
016-791	Insert the USB memory device and press the OK button to clear the message.
016-920	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check the wireless setting for the access point and the printer.
016-930	Remove the device from the USB drive and press the OK button to clear the message.
016-931	
016-981	Press the OK button to cancel the current job. Try copying fewer documents.
016-985	Attached file size is larger than you defined. Press the OK button to clear the message. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enlarge Max E-Mail Size. • Lower the resolution setting. • Change the file format of the scanned image.
017-970	Memory is likely to be full. Press the OK button to clear the message. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete the data stored in the memory. • Lower the resolution setting. • Reduce the number of pages.
017-980	Press the OK button to clear the message. Retry when the printer does not process any job.
017-981	
017-988	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected or your computer does not have any problem.
018-338	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 409
024-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
024-360	
024-371	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 409
024-958	Load the specified paper and press the OK button to clear the message.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 134 • "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 142
024-963	Press the OK button to clear the message and load the specified paper. Follow the on-screen instruction if one appears.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 134 • "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 142
026-720	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the USB memory device has enough memory.

Error Code	What You Can Do
026-721	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the USB memory device is write-protected or gets any disk problem.
026-722	
026-723	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the path and file name to save the data is too long.
026-750	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected, or restart the application you use.
026-751	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the interface cable is securely connected.
026-752	
027-446	Change the IP address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
027-452	
031-521	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-526	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the SMB server is correct. Check DNS connection, or check if the name of the forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-529	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if the password for the SMB server is correct.
031-530	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the SMB server is correct.
031-533	Press the  button to clear the message. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists. • If the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-534	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-535	
031-536	
031-537	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.
031-555	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the network is properly connected.
031-556	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the SMB server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-557	Press the  button to clear the message. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-558	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the access setting to the SMB server is correct by contacting your server administrator.
031-571	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the printer is properly connected to a network.
031-574	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the domain name of the FTP server is correct.
031-575	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the host name setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-576	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-578	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the Ethernet cable is properly connected and if login name (user name) and password for the FTP server are correct.

Error Code	What You Can Do
031-579	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the working path setting to the FTP server is correct.
031-582	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-584	Press the  button to clear the message. Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the file name you specified is not used by other users.• If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.• If the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-585	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any delete/write-protection or disk problem.
031-587	
031-588	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
031-589	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the storage location has free space.
031-594	Press the  button to clear the message. Contact your server administrator to check if the scanned file has wrong setting while being stored to FTP server. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Online Services" on page 409
031-598	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the FTP server encounters any write-protection or disk problem.
033-503	Press the  button to clear the message. Check the report. Delete the unnecessary data stored in the memory.
033-513	
033-517	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the password of the fax lock is correct.
033-518	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if your region is set correctly.
033-519	Fax service is locked. To continue, press the  button and disable the fax lock. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Limiting Access to Printer Operations" on page 317
033-787	Press the  button to clear the message. The job is cancelled.
033-788	Press the  button to clear the message. Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
034-700	Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check if the phone line is connected properly.• Check if the destination number is correct.• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.
034-701	
034-702	
See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236	

Error Code	What You Can Do
034-703	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check if the phone line is connected properly.• Check if the destination number is available and correct.• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.
034-704	
034-705	
034-706	
<p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236	
034-707	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.• Lower Modem Speed.
034-708	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.• Check if the destination number is available.• Lower Modem Speed.
034-709	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.
034-710	
034-711	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.• Lower Modem Speed.
034-712	
034-713	
034-714	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.• Check if the destination number is available.
034-715	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the redial for the specified number of times, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Set Number of Redial to the larger value.• Set Interval Timer or Redial Delay longer.• Lower Modem Speed.
034-716	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed.</p>
034-717	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. Retry sending the fax.</p>
034-718	<p>Press the  button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed.</p>
034-719	

Error Code	What You Can Do
034-720	Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lower Modem Speed. • Enable ECM.
034-721	Press the OK button to clear the message. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled. When retrying sending the fax, lower Modem Speed.
034-722	
034-723	
034-724	
034-725	
034-726	
034-727	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the destination number is available. If the error continues to appear after the retry for the specified number of times, it will be cancelled.
034-750	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236
034-751	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the destination machine blocks your fax as the junk fax. If it does, ask the receiver to disable the setting.
034-752	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly.
034-753	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236
034-754	Press the OK button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
034-755	
034-756	
034-757	
034-758	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. Or, lower Modem Speed. <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236
034-759	Press the OK button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
034-760	
034-761	Press the OK button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. <p>See also:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236
034-762	Press the OK button to clear the message. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lower Modem Speed. • Enable ECM.
034-763	Press the OK button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
034-764	
034-765	
034-766	


Error Code	What You Can Do
034-767	Press the  button to clear the message. Check if the phone line is connected properly. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 236
034-768	Press the  button to clear the message. Lower Modem Speed.
041-340	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
042-358	
042-372	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Online Services" on page 409
061-370	
062-321	
062-360	
062-790	Press the  button to clear the message. The scanned data is deleted. Retry scanning the document.
075-100	Check and clear the paper path, load the paper, and then press the  button to clear the message. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 328
075-921	Load paper for the second side (odd) pages, and press the  button. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Manual Duplex Printing" on page 147
077-100	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer" on page 329
077-104	
077-106	
077-108	
077-109	
077-304	
077-900	Close the rear cover. Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Clearing Paper Jams From the Center Output Tray" on page 331
077-901	Open the rear cover and remove the jammed paper. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Clearing Paper Jams From the Rear of the Printer" on page 329
091-402	The service life of your printer is coming to an end and the printer will soon stop running. If you want to keep using the printer, change the Machine Life setting to Continue Print. However, continuous use of the printer will degrade the print quality. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Machine Life" on page 299
091-441	The printer has exceeded its service life or the settings have been changed to continue using it. The quality of printouts will degrade if the printer continues to be used. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Machine Life" on page 299

Error Code	What You Can Do
092-310	Clean the CTD sensor.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 389
092-651	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
092-661	
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 409
092-910	Clean the CTD sensor.
	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 389
093-423	Replace the specified toner cartridge soon.
093-424	
	See also:
093-425	• "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 390
093-426	
093-919	Re-install or replace the specified toner cartridge.
093-920	
	See also:
093-921	• "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 390
093-922	
093-930	Remove the specified toner cartridge and install a new one. If you do not replace the toner cartridge, print quality problems may occur.
093-931	
	See also:
093-932	• "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 390
093-933	
093-926	Replace the specified toner cartridge with the supported one.
093-960	
	See also:
093-961	• "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 390
093-962	
093-970	Re-install the specified toner cartridge.
093-971	
	See also:
093-972	• "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 393
093-973	

Error Code	What You Can Do
116-210	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
116-314	
116-323	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 409
116-325	
116-326	
116-335	
116-355	
116-395	
117-331	
117-332	
117-333	
117-334	
117-342	
117-346	
117-348	Retry, and check the report. Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 409
117-350	Open the rear cover and close to continue. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
117-366	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.
124-333	
134-211	See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Online Services" on page 409
191-310	Although the service life of your printer has been over and the printer stopped running, you can still use the printer by pressing the ⏮ (Back) button and the ▼ button at the same time. However, continuous use of the printer will degrade the print quality. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Machine Life" on page 299
191-311	The life of your printer has been over and you can no longer use the printer.
193-700	This message indicates the printer is in the Non-Genuine Mode.

NOTE:

- As for the following message, which does not include an error code, refer to the table below for the solution.

Error Message	What You Can Do
USB Memory Error Cannot Mount File System Remove from USB Port	Remove the USB memory device and check if it is usable. Press the  button to clear the message.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the LCD panel.

You need to know the model of your printer and serial number. See the label on the rear cover of your printer.

Getting Help

This section includes:

- ["LCD Panel Messages" on page 376](#)
- ["SimpleMonitor Alerts \(Windows Only\)" on page 376](#)
- ["Obtaining the Product Information" on page 377](#)

Fuji Xerox provides several automatic diagnostic tools to help you produce and maintain print quality.

■ LCD Panel Messages

The LCD panel provides you with information and troubleshooting help. When an error or warning condition occurs, the LCD panel displays a message informing you of the problem.

See also:

- ["Understanding Printer Messages" on page 366](#)

■ SimpleMonitor Alerts (Windows Only)

The SimpleMonitor is a tool that is included on the *Software Pack CD-ROM*. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. If the printer is unable to print your job, the SimpleMonitor automatically displays an alert on your computer screen to let you know that the printer needs attention.

■ Obtaining the Product Information

Obtaining the Latest Print Driver

The latest print driver can be obtained by downloading it from our web site.

The following procedure uses the Windows print driver as an example.

NOTE:

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

- 1 In your print driver's **Properties** window, click the **Configuration** tab and then click **About**.
- 2 Click **Fuji Xerox Web Site**.
Your web browser launches and our web site is displayed.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the web site and download an appropriate print driver.

NOTE:

- The URL of the driver download service page is as follows: <http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>
- For the latest information about the print driver features, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

Updating the Printer's Firmware

Our web site also provides a tool that allows you to update the printer's firmware (software embedded within the printer) from your computer.

The latest firmware and updating tool can be downloaded from the following URL.

Follow the instructions on the web site and download the correct firmware update.

<http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/>

NOTE:

- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

Non-Genuine Mode

When toner within a toner cartridge is empty, the `XXXX Cartridge is Close to Life or Replace XXXX Cartridge (XXXX: Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, or Black)` message appears.

When you want to use the printer in the Non-Genuine Mode, enable the Non-Genuine Mode and replace the toner cartridge.

IMPORTANT:

- If you use the printer in the Non-Genuine Mode, the performance of the printer may not be at its optimum. Any problems that may arise from the use of the Non-Genuine Mode are not covered by our quality guarantee. The continuous use of the Non-Genuine Mode can also cause the printer to break down, and any repair charges for such break down will be incurred by users.






NOTE:

- To disable the Non-Genuine Mode, select `Off for Non-Genuine Mode` on the operator panel or deselect the check box next to **On** on the **Non-Genuine Mode** page on the **Printer Maintenance** tab in the Printer Setting Utility.

■ Using the Operator Panel

NOTE:

- Before starting the operation described below, confirm that the `Select Function` screen is displayed on the LCD panel.

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select `Admin Menu` and then press the  button.
- 3 Select `Maintenance` and then press the  button.
- 4 Select `Non-Genuine Mode` and then press the  button.
- 5 Select `On` and then press the  button.
- 6 Press the  button until the top page is displayed.
The printer switches to the Non-Genuine Mode.

■ Using the Printer Setting Utility (Windows Only)

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **Printer Setting Utility**.

NOTE:

- The window to select a printer appears in this step when multiple print drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of the desired printer listed in **Printer Name**.

The Printer Setting Utility opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Non-Genuine Mode** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Non-Genuine Mode** page is displayed.
- 4 Select the check box next to **On**, and then click the **Apply New Settings** button.

Maintenance

This chapter includes:

- ["Cleaning the Printer" on page 382](#)
- ["Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 390](#)
- ["Ordering Supplies" on page 395](#)
- ["Storing Consumables" on page 397](#)
- ["Managing the Printer" on page 398](#)
- ["Conserving Supplies" on page 401](#)
- ["Checking Page Counts" on page 402](#)
- ["Moving the Printer" on page 403](#)

Cleaning the Printer

This section describes how to clean the printer in order to maintain it in good condition and print clean printouts all the time.



WARNING:

- When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners to avoid catching fire and explosion.



CAUTION:

- When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

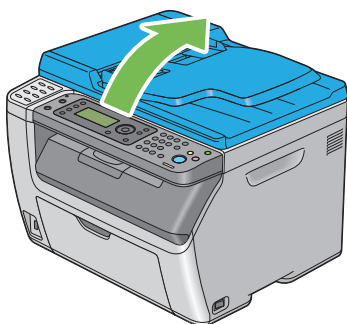
This section includes:

- ["Cleaning the Scanner" on page 383](#)
- ["Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 385](#)
- ["Cleaning Inside the Printer" on page 386](#)
- ["Cleaning the Color Toner Density \(CTD\) Sensor" on page 389](#)

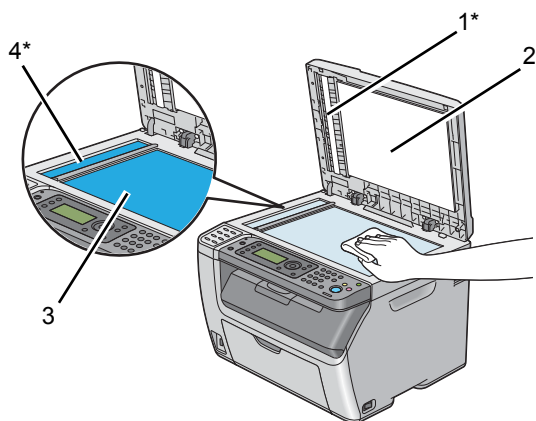
■ Cleaning the Scanner

Keep the scanner clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the document cover.



- 3 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, wipe the surface of the document glass and ADF glass until they are clean and dry.
For the DocuPrint CM215 b, wipe the surface of the document glass until it is clean and dry.



1* Film

2 White Document Cover

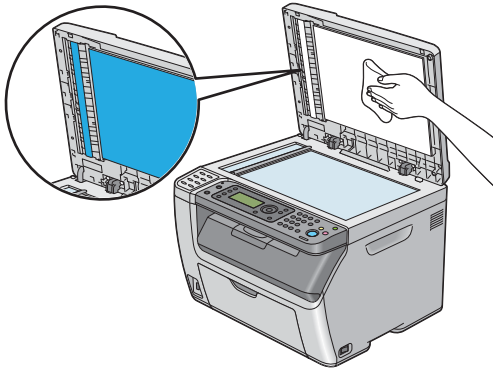
3 Document Glass

4* ADF Glass

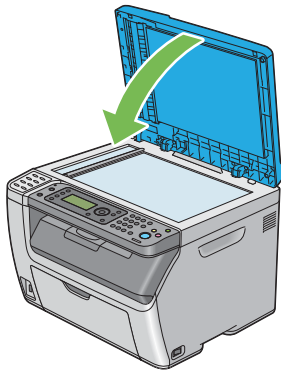
*: Available only on the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw.

- 4 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, wipe the underside of the white document cover and film until they are clean and dry.

For the DocuPrint CM215 b, wipe the underside of the white document cover until it is clean and dry.



- 5 Close the document cover.



■ Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

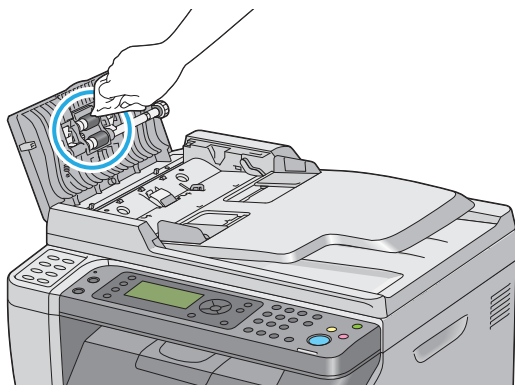
Keep the ADF feed roller clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the ADF feed roller at regular intervals.

- 1 Open the ADF cover.



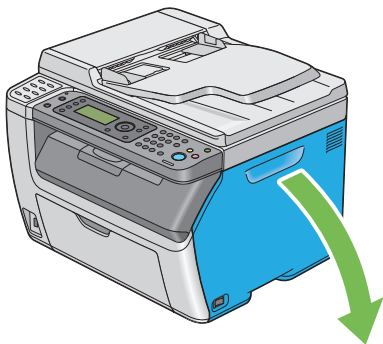
- 2 Wipe the ADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the ADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the ADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.

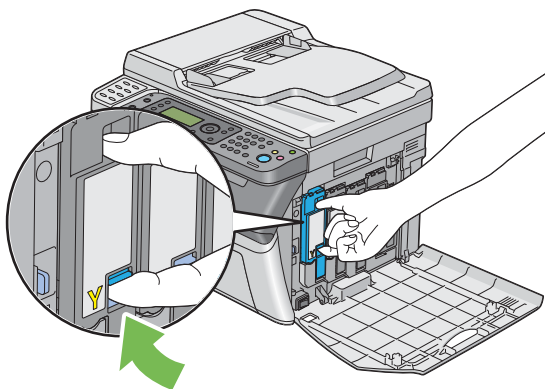


■ Cleaning Inside the Printer

- 1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord.
- 2 Open the toner access cover.



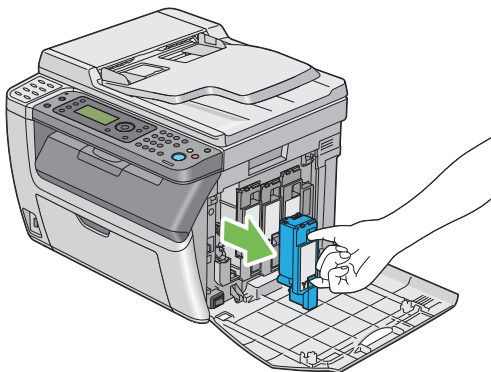
- 3 Pinch the toner cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.



- 4 Pull the toner cartridge out.

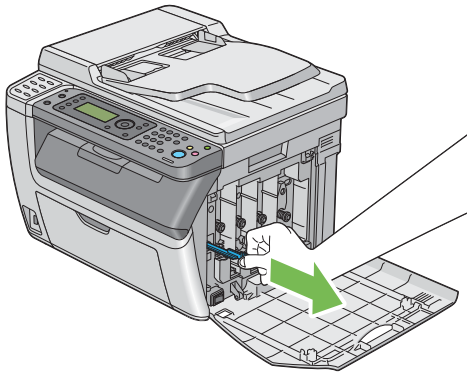
IMPORTANT:

- Always pull the toner cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.

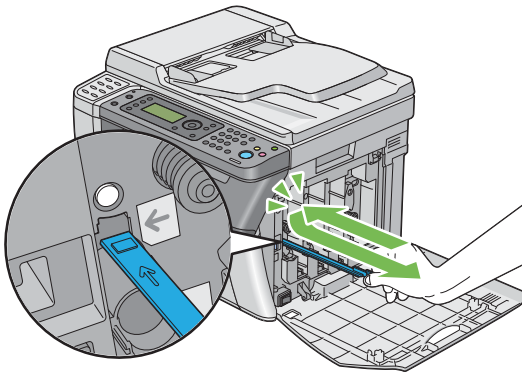


- 5 Pull the other three toner cartridges out as well.

- 6** Pull the print head cleaning rod out.

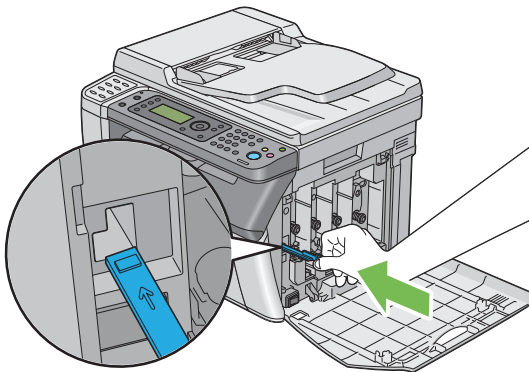


- 7** Insert the print head cleaning rod fully into the hole beside the arrow on the printer until its tip reaches the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.

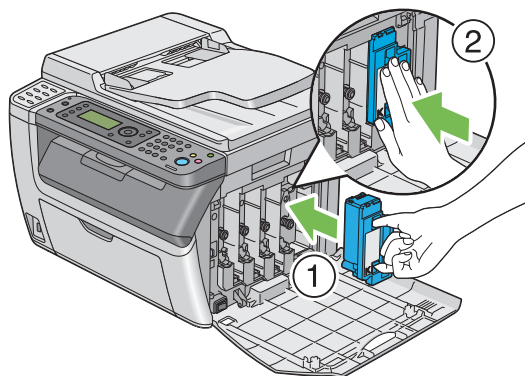


- 8** Repeat the same procedure for the other three holes.

- 9** Insert the print head cleaning rod back to its original location.

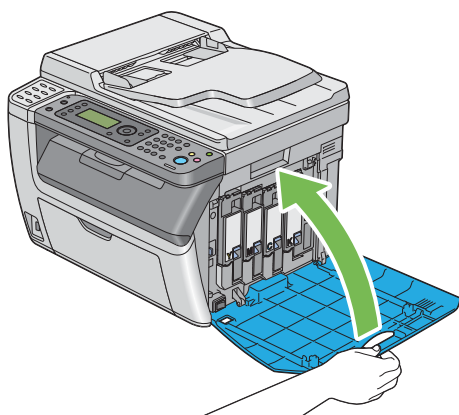


- 10** Replace the black toner cartridge by adjusting it to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the toner cartridge clicks.



- 11** Replace the other three toner cartridges as well.

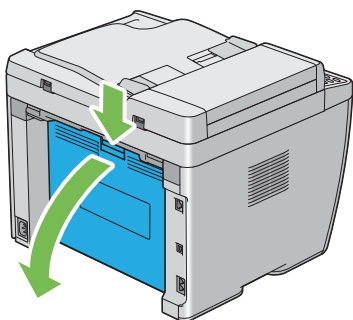
- 12** Close the toner access cover.



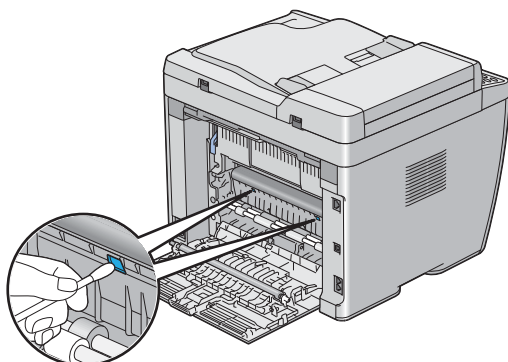
■ Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor

Clean the CTD sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the **Printer Status** window or operator panel.

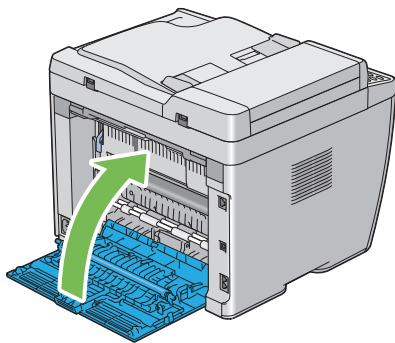
- 1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord.
- 2 Push the rear cover handle and open the rear cover.



- 3 Clean the CTD sensor inside the printer with a clean dry cotton swab.



- 4 Close the rear cover.



- 5 Connect the power cord and turn on the printer.

Replacing Toner Cartridges

Fuji Xerox toner cartridges are available only through Fuji Xerox.

It is recommended that you use Fuji Xerox toner cartridges for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using consumables not supplied by Fuji Xerox.

WARNING:

- **Never use a vacuum cleaner for spilled toner and residual toner in this product, toner cartridge or toner bottle.**
It may catch fire by electric sparks inside a vacuum cleaner and cause explosion.
Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off the spills. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
- **Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame.** Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.
If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.

CAUTION:

- **Keep drum cartridges (or drum if not a cartridge type) and toner cartridges out of the reach of children.** If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.
- **When replacing drum cartridges (or drum if not a cartridge type) and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner.** In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.
- **If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.**
If you get toner particles in the eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.
If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.
If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of the toner.
- Be sure to use the starter toner cartridge shipped with the printer until it gets empty, and then replace it with a purchased one.

This section includes:

- ["Overview" on page 391](#)
- ["Removing the Toner Cartridges" on page 392](#)
- ["Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 393](#)

■ Overview

The printer has toner cartridges of four colors: black (K), yellow (Y), magenta (M), and cyan (C).
When a toner cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

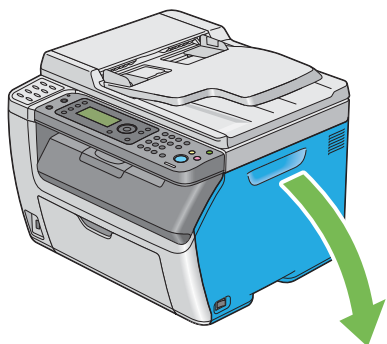
Message (Example)	Action
093-426 Printer Black Cartridge is Close to Life*	<p>The specified toner cartridge has become low. Prepare a new one.</p> <p>The error code differs depending on the color of the toner cartridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 093-426: Black• 093-425: Cyan• 093-424: Magenta• 093-423: Yellow
Replace Cart. 093-933 Printer Replace Black Cartridge	<p>The specified toner cartridge has become empty. Replace the old toner cartridge with a new one.</p> <p>The error code differs depending on the color of the toner cartridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 093-933: Black• 093-932: Cyan• 093-931: Magenta• 093-930: Yellow
*: This warning appears only when Fuji Xerox toner cartridges are used (Non-Genuine Mode is set to Off.)	

IMPORTANT:

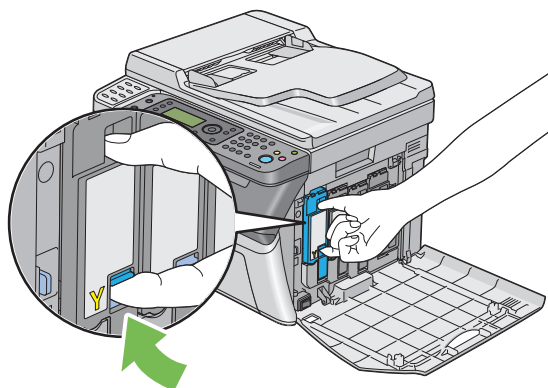
- When placing a used toner cartridge on the floor or on a table, place a few sheets of paper under the toner cartridge to catch any toner that may spill.
- Do not reuse old toner cartridges once you remove them from the printer. Doing so can impair print quality.
- Do not shake or pound the used toner cartridges. The remaining toner may spill.
- We recommend you to use up the toner cartridges within one year after removing them from the packaging.

■ Removing the Toner Cartridges

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Open the toner access cover.



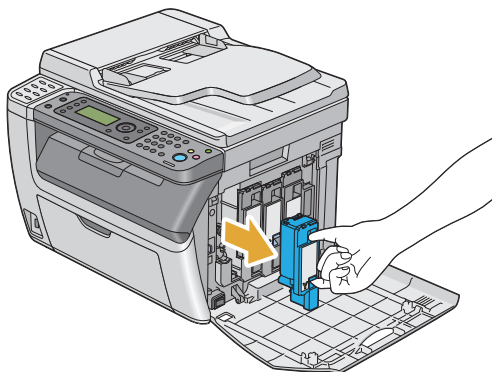
- 3 Spread a few sheets of paper on the floor or table where the removed toner cartridge is to be placed.
- 4 Pinch the toner cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.



- 5 Pull the toner cartridge out.

IMPORTANT:

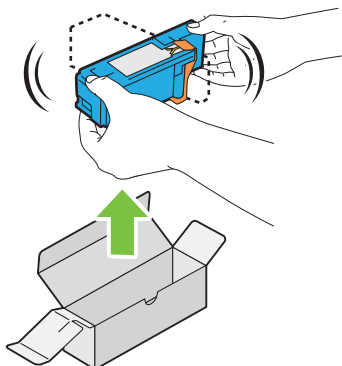
- Always pull the toner cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.



- 6 Place the toner cartridge slowly on the sheets of paper spread in step 3.

■ Installing a Toner Cartridge

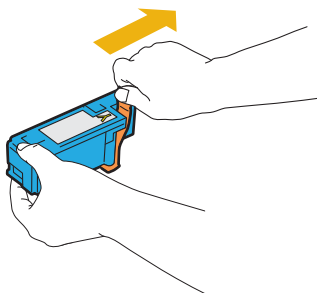
- 1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color and shake it five to six times to distribute the toner evenly.



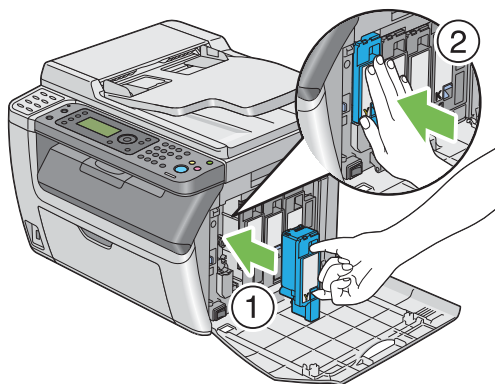
NOTE:

- Confirm that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it.
- Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spilling of the toner.

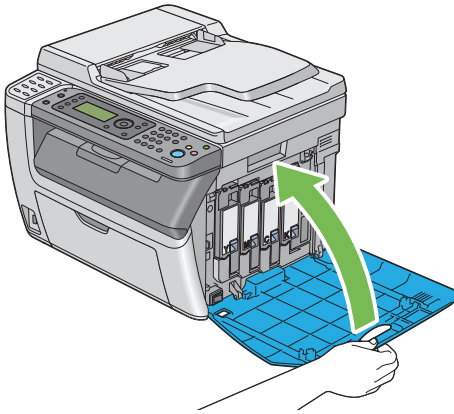
- 2 Remove the tape from the toner cartridge.



- 3 Adjust the toner cartridge to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the toner cartridge clicks.



- 4 Close the toner access cover.



- 5 Turn on the printer.
- 6 Pack the removed toner cartridge in the box in which the installed toner cartridge was packed up.
- 7 Take care not to contact with the spilled toner and remove the sheets of paper spread under the removed toner cartridge.

Ordering Supplies

This section includes:

- ["Consumables" on page 395](#)
- ["When to Order Toner Cartridges" on page 396](#)
- ["Recycling Supplies" on page 396](#)

The toner cartridges need to be ordered occasionally. Each toner cartridge includes installation instructions on the box.

■ Consumables

IMPORTANT:

- Use of consumables not recommended by Fuji Xerox can impair machine quality and performance. Use only consumables recommended by Fuji Xerox.

Product Name	Product Code	Printable number of pages
Toner Cartridge [Black] High capacity	CT201591	Approx. 2000 pages
	CT201595 (for China)	
Toner Cartridge [Yellow] Standard capacity	CT202133	Approx. 700 pages
	CT202136 (for China)	
Toner Cartridge [Yellow] High capacity	CT201594	Approx. 1400 pages
	CT201598 (for China)	
Toner Cartridge [Magenta] Standard capacity	CT202132	Approx. 700 pages
	CT202135 (for China)	
Toner Cartridge [Magenta] High capacity	CT201593	Approx. 1400 pages
	CT201597 (for China)	
Toner Cartridge [Cyan] Standard capacity	CT202131	Approx. 700 pages
	CT202134 (for China)	
Toner Cartridge [Cyan] High capacity	CT201592	Approx. 1400 pages
	CT201596 (for China)	

- Average standard pages. Declared yield in accordance with JIS X6932 (ISO/IEC 19798). These values are estimates and vary depending on conditions such as the content being printed, paper size, paper type, the machine's operating environment, initializing process done when you turn on or off the printer, and adjustments to maintain print quality.

NOTE:

- The printable number of pages for the starter toner cartridges shipped with the printer are approximately 1000 pages for black toner cartridge and 700 pages for yellow, magenta, and cyan toner cartridges.
- Each toner cartridge includes installation instructions on the box.

■ When to Order Toner Cartridges

The LCD panel displays a warning when the toner cartridge nears its replacement time. Verify that you have replacements on hand. It is important to order a toner cartridge when the messages first appear to avoid interruptions to your printing. The LCD panel displays an error message when the toner cartridge must be replaced.

To order toner cartridges, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorized dealer.

IMPORTANT:

- This printer is designed to provide the most stable performance and print quality when used with the recommended toner cartridges. Not using toner cartridges recommended for this machine degrades the performance and printing quality of the printer. You could also incur charges if the machine breaks down. To receive customer support and achieve the optimum performance of the printer, be sure to use recommended toner cartridges.

■ Recycling Supplies

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.
- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges. Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40 °C (140 °F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- An environment with salty air.

Managing the Printer

This section includes:

- ["Checking or Managing the Printer with the CentreWare Internet Services \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 398](#)
- ["Checking Printer Status with the SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 399](#)
- ["Checking Printer Status Through E-mail \(DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only\)" on page 400](#)

■ Checking or Managing the Printer with the CentreWare Internet Services (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

When the printer is installed in a TCP/IP environment, you can check printer status and configure settings using a web browser on a network computer. You can also use the CentreWare Internet Services to check the remaining volume of consumables and the paper loaded in this printer.

NOTE:

- When using the printer as a local printer, you cannot use the CentreWare Internet Services. For details about checking the status of a local printer, refer to ["Checking Printer Status with the SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 399](#).

Starting the CentreWare Internet Services

Use the following procedure to start the CentreWare Internet Services.

- 1 Launch your web browser.
- 2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.
The CentreWare Internet Services page appears.

• Using Online Help

For details regarding the items that can be set in each CentreWare Internet Services page, click the **Help** button to display the online Help.

■ Checking Printer Status with the SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

The SimpleMonitor is a tool that is installed with your print driver. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. The SimpleMonitor can also check the status of the tray and remaining amount of toner cartridges.

Starting The SimpleMonitor

Double-click the SimpleMonitor icon on the taskbar or right-click the icon and select **Printer Selection**.

If the SimpleMonitor icon is not displayed on the taskbar, open the SimpleMonitor from the **start** menu. The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **Fuji Xerox Printer Software for Asia-Pacific** → your printer → **SimpleMonitor-Btype for Asia-Pacific**.

The **Printer Selection** window appears.

- 2 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.

The **Printer Status** Window appears.

For details about the functions of the SimpleMonitor, refer to the Help of the SimpleMonitor.

See also:

- ["SimpleMonitor \(Windows Only\)" on page 59](#)

■ Checking Printer Status Through E-mail (DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw Only)

When connected in a network environment where sending and receiving of e-mail is possible, the printer can send an e-mail report to specified e-mail addresses containing the error status which has occurred on the printer.

Setting the E-mail Environment

Activate the CentreWare Internet Services. On the **Properties** tab, configure the following settings according to your e-mail environment. After configuring the settings on each screen, always click **Apply** and then turn off/on the printer to reboot. For details about each item, refer to the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

Item	Item to be configured	Description
General Setup > StatusMessenger	Recipient's E-mail Address 1	Set the e-mail address to which notices about errors are sent.
	Recipient's E-mail Address 2	
	Notification Items	Set the contents of the notices to send in the e-mail.
Port Status	StatusMessenger	Select Enabled .
Protocol Settings > E-mail	SMTP Server Settings	Select appropriate settings for sending and receiving e-mail.
	• Machine's E-mail Address	
	• SMTP Server Address	
	• SMTP Server Port Number	
	Send Authentication	
	• E-mail Send Authentication	
	• Login Name	
	• Password	
	• Re-enter Password	
	POP3 Server Settings	
	• POP3 Server Address	
	• POP3 Server Port Number	
	• Login Name	
	• Password	
	• Re-enter Password	

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your print driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	Windows print driver: Toner Saving Mode in the Graphics tab Mac OS X print driver: Toner Saving Mode on Feature Sets: Detailed Settings in the Printer Features pane	This feature allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. When this feature is used, the image quality will be lower than when it is not used.
Print media	Windows print driver: Multiple Up in the Layout tab Mac OS X print driver: Pages per Sheet in the Layout pane	<p>The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. The available numbers that each print driver can print one sheet of paper are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows print driver: 2, 4, 8, or 16 pages• Mac OS X print driver: 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages <p>Combined with the duplex setting, Pages per Sheet allows you to print up to 32 pages on one sheet of paper. (16 images on the front and 16 on the back)</p> <p>Combined with the duplex setting, feature allows you to print up to 32 pages on one sheet of paper. (16 images on the front and 16 on the back)</p>

Checking Page Counts

The total number of printed pages can be checked at the operator panel. Three meters are available: Meter 1 (color prints), Meter 2 (monochrome prints), and Meter 4 (Meter 1 + Meter 2). Meter 3 always shows 0 on your printer.

The Meter Readings counts the number of pages printed properly. Single side print (including Multiple Up) is counted as one page, and 2-sided print (including Multiple Up) is counted as two. During 2-sided printing, if an error occurs after one side is printed properly, it is counted as one page.


When printing color data, which has been converted by using ICC profile on an application, with the Color setting, the data is printed by color even if it seems to be black and white data on the monitor. In that case, Meter 1 and Meter 4 are increased.

When doing 2-sided printing, a blank page may be inserted automatically depending on the settings of the application. In this case, the blank page is counted as one page. However, when doing 2-sided printing for odd number of pages, the blank page inserted to the rear side of the last odd page is not counted.

See also:

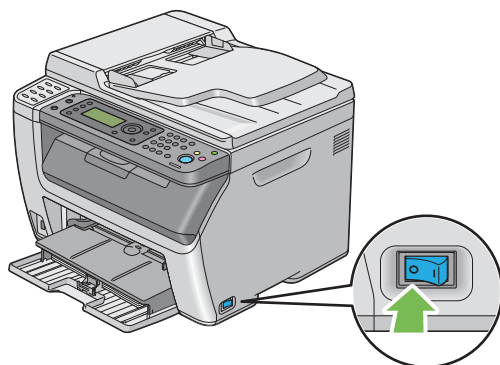
- ["Meter Readings" on page 275](#)

Use the following procedure to check a meter:

- 1 Press the **System** button.
- 2 Select Meter Readings, and then press the  button.
- 3 Check the values for each meter.

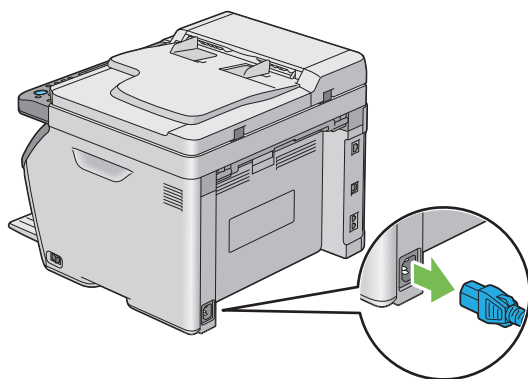
Moving the Printer

- 1 Turn off the printer.

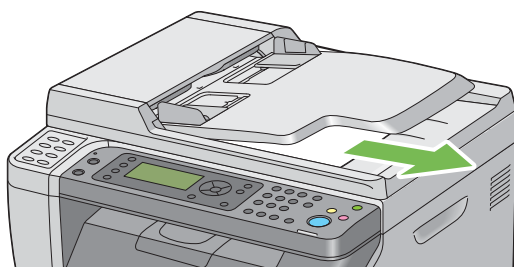


- 2 For the DocuPrint CM215 f/CM215 fw, disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and any other cables.

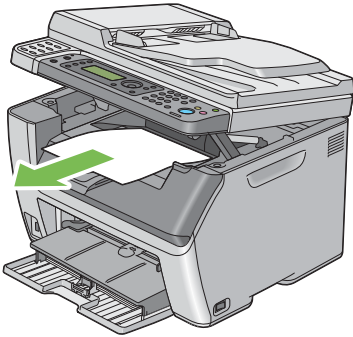
For the DocuPrint CM215 b, disconnect the power cord and USB cable, and go to step 4.



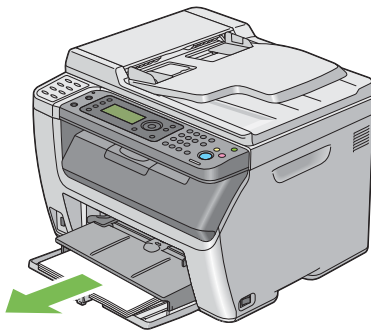
- 3 Remove any paper in the document output tray.



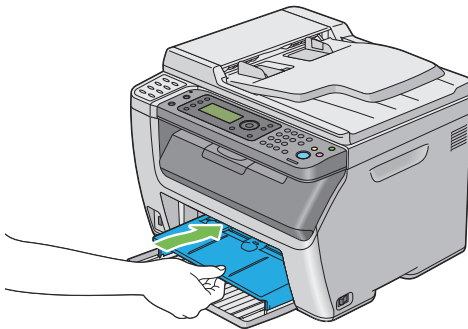
- 4** Remove any paper in the center output tray if there is. Close the output tray extension if it is extended.



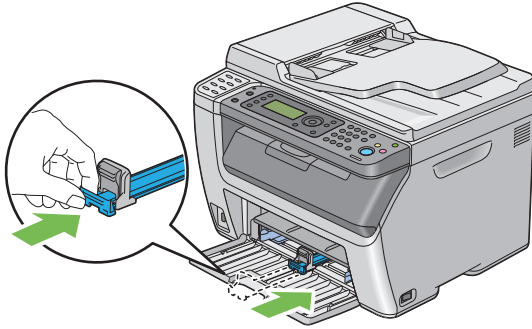
- 5** Remove any paper in the priority sheet inserter (PSI) or multipurpose feeder (MPF). Keep the paper wrapped and away from humidity and dirt.



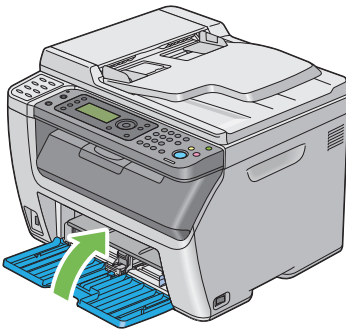
- 6** Push the PSI in.



7 Slide the slide bar backward until it stops.



8 Close the front cover.



9 Lift the printer and move it gently.



10 Adjust the color registration before using your printer.

See also:

- ["Adjusting Color Registration" on page 354](#)

Contacting Fuji Xerox

This chapter includes:

- ["Technical Support" on page 408](#)
- ["Online Services" on page 409](#)

Technical Support

Fuji Xerox recommends the Customer first utilize support materials shipped with the product, product diagnostics, information contained on the Web, and email support. If unsuccessful, to obtain service under product warranty the Customer must notify Fuji Xerox Telephone Support or its authorized service representative of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period. Customer will provide appropriate assistance to Telephone Support personnel to resolve issues, such as restoration of the operating system, software program and drivers to their default configuration and settings, verification of functionality of Fuji Xerox supplied products, replacement of customer replaceable units, clearing paper misfeeds and cleaning the unit and other prescribed routine and preventative maintenance.

If the Customer's product contains features that enable Fuji Xerox or its authorized service representative to diagnose and repair problems with the product remotely, Fuji Xerox may request that the Customer allow such remote access to the product.

Online Services

You can find detail Product and Consumable warranty information and activate your warranty by registering your details on our website at <http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/>

Fuji Xerox Online Support Assistant provides instructions and troubleshooting guides to resolve your printer problems. It is an easy-to-use, searchable online help. To find out more, please visit our online support at <http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/>

Index

Symbols

button 49

A

Address Book 275
 Address Book button 49
 Address Book Editor 62
 ADF cover 46, 47, 323
 ADF glass 47, 383
 Adjust Altitude 299
 Adjust BTR 295
 Adjust ColorRegi 297
 Adjust Fusing Unit 296
 Adjust Paper Type 294
 Adjusting color registration 354
 Admin Menu 276
 Alert Tone 292
 Alerts
 SimpleMonitor 376
 Ans Select 267, 283
 ANS/FAX Mode 267
 Applicable Lines 41
 Auto Ans. ANS/FAX 267, 283
 Auto Ans. TEL/FAX 267, 283
 Auto Answer Fax 267, 283
 Auto Exposure 184, 305, 309
 Auto Regi Adjust 296
 Auto Reset 291
 Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) 44, 47
 Automatic redialing 247
 Avoiding jam 322

B

B&W/Color LED 49
 Back button 49
 Basic printer problems 335
 Black-and-white
 Selecting for scanning 231
 Bond 295, 296
 BTR Refresh 297

C

C (Clear) button 48, 49
 Canceling a print job 154
 From computer 154, 155
 From operator panel 154
 Center output tray 44, 45, 323
 CentreWare Internet Services 57

Managing printer 398
 Online Help for 398
 Starting 398
 Clean Developer 297
 Clear All button 48
 Clearing jam 322
 Clearing paper jam
 From ADF 324
 From center output tray 331
 From front of the printer 328
 From rear of the printer 329
 Clock mode 240
 Clock Settings 292
 Coding method 40
 Collated 177, 303
 Color 176, 303, 308
 Selecting for scanning 231
 Color Balance 305
 Color Balance B 185
 Color Balance G 184
 Color Balance R 184
 Color Button Set 308
 Color capability 34
 Color Mode button 49
 Color registration chart 355
 Company Name 268, 286
 Connecting printer 71
 Connection specifications 71
 Connection type 71
 Connectivity 37, 38
 Conserving supplies 401
 Consumables 395
 Contacting service 375
 Continuous copy 35
 Continuous copy speed 35
 Continuous print speed 37
 Copy button/LED 48
 Copy problem 352
 Copy quality
 Problems 353
 CTD sensor 389

D

Data LED 48
 Delayed Start 312
 Demo Page 275
 Determining values 356
 Dialing Type 267, 284
 Dimensions 36
 Direct Fax 249

Discard Size	268, 289
Display problems	336
Document cover	45, 47
Document feeder tray	44, 47
Document glass	45, 47, 383
Document guides	47
Document output tray	44
Document Size	41, 180, 304, 308
DRPD Mode	267
DRPD Pattern	268, 287

E

ECM	268, 289
Edit From Field	302
Energy Saver button/LED	48
Entering values	357
Envelope	295, 296
Error and Warning Messages	376
Error History	274
Error LED	48
Ethernet port	46, 71
Express Scan Manager	63
Extel Hook Thresh	268, 289

F

F/W Version	294
Fault Time-Out	291
Fax Activity	268, 275, 290
Fax Broadcast	268, 290
Fax button/LED	49
Fax Cover Page	268, 286
Fax Fwd E-Mail	268, 288
Fax Fwd Number	268, 288
FAX Mode	267
Fax problems	358
Fax Transmit	268, 290
File Format	307
Film	383
First Copy Output Time	34
Forward Settings	268, 288
Front Cover	44, 45, 323

G

Getting help	376
SimpleMonitor alerts	376
Gray Balance	185, 306
Group Dial	276
Group dialing	259

H

Halftone/Printable Colors	34
HDD	34

I

Image Compression	310
Images	
Setting color mode	231
Initialize NVM	298
Installing a toner cartridge	393
Installing print driver	
Mac OS X	120
Windows	89
Internet Services	281
Interval Timer	267, 285
IP Filter	282

J

Jam	334
Job History	274
Job Status button/LED	48
Job Time-Out	292
Junk Fax Filter	267, 285

L

Labels	295, 296
Launcher	60
LCD	48
LCD panel	49
LCD panel messages	376
Length guide	44, 45
Levers	46, 323
Light Card	295, 296
Lighten/Darken	182, 244, 305, 309, 311
Limiting access to printer operations	317
Line Monitor	267, 284
Line Type	267, 284
Liquid crystal display	48
Loading envelope	
MPF	139
PSI	144
Loading print media	133
MPF	134
PSI	142
Low Toner Alert Msg	293
LPD	281
LW Gloss Card	295, 296

M

Machine Life	299
Machine weight	36
Main components	44
Managing printer	398
Manual duplex printing	147
Margin Left/Right	189, 306, 310
Margin Middle	190, 307, 310
Margin Top/Bottom	188, 306, 309

Max E-Mail Size	310
Memory	34
Meter Readings	275
Total printed pages	402
Meters	
Total page counts	402
mm / inch	293
Modem Speed	268, 289
Mottle	344
Moving printer	403
Multiple Up	401
Multipurpose feeder (MPF)	44, 45, 323

N

Network	277
No.n/Address (n is 1 - 5.)	282
No.n/Mask (n is 1 - 5.)	282
No.n/Mode(n is 1 - 5.)	282
Non-Genuine Mode	298
Number of copies	176
Number of Fax Lines	40
Number of Redial	267, 285
Numeric keypad	48
N-Up	186, 306

O

OK button	49
One-touch buttons	48
Operating system	37, 41
Operator panel	44, 45
Ordering toner cartridges	396
Original paper size	34, 38
Original size	
Setting for scanning	232
Original Type	181, 243, 305, 311
Output paper size	34
Output paper weight	34
Output tray capacity	35
Output tray extension	44, 45, 151

P

Panel Language	314
Panel Lock	300, 315
Panel Settings	274
Panel Settings page	53
Paper chute	46
Paper Error	307
Paper feed roller	46
Paper jam location	323
Paper tray capacity	35
Paper width guides	44, 45, 137
Parts name	44
PDL	37

Peer-to-Peer	115
Phone Book	276
Phone connector	46, 71
Plain	295, 296
Point and Print	111
Port 9100	281
Power connector	46
Power consumption	36
Power On Wizard	293
Power Saver Timer	291
Power Saving Timer	318
Power supply	35
Power switch	44, 45
Prefix Dial	268, 269, 288
Prefix Dial Num	268, 288
Print button/LED	49
Print driver installing	
Mac OS X	120
Windows	89
Print driver pre-install status	89
Print head cleaning rod	44, 45
Print media	401
Dimensions	133
Print quality problems	339
Print resolution	37
Printer connection and software installation	67
Printer Setting Utility	58
Printer software	55
Printer status	
StatusMessenger	400
Printing	153
Custom paper	161
With Mac OS X print driver	162
With Windows print driver	162
Printing basics	127
Printing from computer	153
Printing problems	337
Printing Resolution	34
Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)	44, 45, 323
Product features	30
Protocol	37
Protocol Monitor	275

R

Rear cover	46, 323
Rear cover handle	46
Recording paper size	40
Recycled	295, 296
Recycling supplies	396
Redial Delay	267, 285
Redial/Pause button	48
Reduce/Enlarge	178, 304
Reduction/enlargement	34
Region	268, 290

Remote Rcv Tone	268, 285
Remote Receive	267, 285
Removing the toner cartridges	392
Report page	164
Reset Wireless	280
Resetting to factory defaults	319
Resolution	243, 308, 311
Setting for scanning	231
Ring Tone Volume	267, 284
Ringer Volume	265

S

Safety	
Electrical	17
Operational	22
Scan button/LED	48
Scan driver/Printer utility problems	363
Scan to e-mail	39
Scan to Network	307
Scan to PC	39
Scanning	
Black-and-white images	231
Color images	231
Scan resolution	231
Setting color mode	231
Setting image file type	230
Specifying original size	232
Suppress background color	232
Scanning halftone	38
Scanning problems	360
Scanning resolution	34, 38, 40
Scanning speed	38
Secure Receive	301
Secure Settings	300
Send document size	40
Send Header	268, 286
Sending a fax	241
Sending a fax automatically	245
Sending a fax manually	246
Service Lock	301
Setting copy options	175
Setting the printer ID	239
Setting the time and date	240
Setting up for Web Services on Devices (WSD)	105
Setting your region	238
Setup Disk Creation Tool	64
Sharpness	183, 305, 309
SimpleMonitor	59
SimpleMonitor Alerts	376
Slide bar	44, 45
SNMP	281
Software Download	302
Space requirement	36
Speaker Volume	265

Specification	33
Speed Dial	276
Speed Dial button	48
Start button	48
StatusMessenger	281
Checking printer status	400
Configuring	400
Stop button	48
Storing consumables	397
System button/LED	48
System Settings	274

T

TCP/IP	281
TEL Mode	267
TEL/FAX Mode	267
TIFF File Format	310
Toner access cover	44, 45
Toner cartridges	
Conserving	401
When to order	396
Toner Refresh	297
Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) ...	198
Transfer belt	46, 323
Transfer roller	46
Transmission mode	40
Transmission resolution	41
Transmission speed	40, 41
Transmission time	40
Tray Settings	313

U

USB drive	44, 45
USB port	46, 71
USB Settings	
Port Status	302
USB storage device	226

W

Wall jack connector	46, 71, 237
Warm-up time	34
Warning and error messages	376
White document cover	383
Wi-Fi	282
Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)	200
Wired network	
Ethernet	277
Initialize NVM	282
Protocol	281
Wireless Setup	278
Wireless Status	277
WPS	280

Y

Your Fax Number 268, 286

DocuPrint CM215 Series User Guide

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

ME6374E2-1 (Edition 1)

July 2013

Copyright© 2013 by Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.